

BB



Europäisches Patentamt
European Patent Office
Office européen des brevets



11 Publication number: 0 620 215 A1

12

EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION

21 Application number: 94302666.6

51 Int. Cl. 5: C07D 209/22, C07D 209/24,
C07D 401/06, A61K 31/405

22 Date of filing: 14.04.94

30 Priority: 16.04.93 US 48629
15.03.94 US 208721

43 Date of publication of application:
19.10.94 Bulletin 94/42

64 Designated Contracting States:
AT BE CH DE DK ES FR GB GR IE IT LI LU NL
PT SE

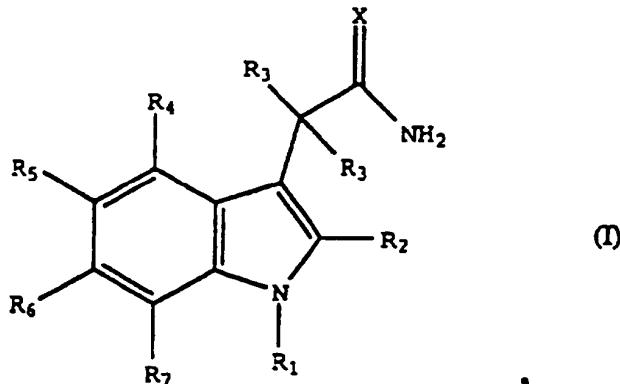
71 Applicant: ELI LILLY AND COMPANY
Lilly Corporate Center
Indianapolis Indiana 46285 (US)

72 Inventor: Bach, Nicholas James
7215 South Meridian
Indianapolis, Indiana 46217 (US)
Inventor: Dillard, Robert Delane
7243 West 92nd Street
Zionsville, Indiana 46077 (US)
Inventor: Draheim, Susan Elizabeth
6125 Burlington Avenue
Indianapolis, Indiana 46220 (US)
Inventor: Hermann, Robert Bell
7315 North Irvington Avenue
Indianapolis, Indiana 46250 (US)
Inventor: Schevitz, Richard Walter
6053 Halfmoon Lane
Indianapolis, Indiana 46220 (US)

74 Representative: Tapping, Kenneth George et
al
Erl Wood Manor
Windlesham Surrey, GU20 6PH (GB)

54 1H-Indole-3-acetamide derivatives as sPLA₂ Inhibitors.

57 A class of 1H-indole-3-acetamides, represented by the formula (I), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof;



is disclosed together with the use of such indole compounds for inhibiting sPLA₂ mediated release of fatty acids for treatment of conditions such as septic shock.

EP 0 620 215 A1

Jouve, 18, rue Saint-Denis, 75001 PARIS

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Field of the Invention

5 This invention relates to novel 1H-indole-3-acetamides useful for inhibiting sPLA₂ mediated release of fatty acids for conditions such as septic shock.

Background Information

10 The structure and physical properties of human non-pancreatic secretory phospholipase A₂ (hereinafter called, "sPLA₂") has been thoroughly described in two articles, namely, "Cloning and Recombinant Expression of Phospholipase A₂ Present in Rheumatoid Arthritic Synovial Fluid" by Seilhamer, Jeffrey J.; Pruzanski, Waldemar; Vadas Peter; Plant, Shelley; Miller, Judy A.; Kloss, Jean; and Johnson, Lorin K; The Journal of Biological Chemistry, Vol. 264, No. 10, Issue of April 5, pp. 5335-5338, 1989; and "Structure and Properties of a

15 Human Non-pancreatic Phospholipase A₂" by Kramer, Ruth M.; Hession, Catherine; Johansen, Berit; Hayes, Gretchen; McGraw, Paula; Chow, E. Pingchang; Tizard, Richard; and Pepinsky, R. Blake; The Journal of Biological Chemistry, Vol. 264, No. 10, Issue of April 5, pp. 5768-5775, 1989; the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

It is believed that sPLA₂ is a rate limiting enzyme in the arachidonic acid cascade which hydrolyzes membrane phospholipids. Thus, it is important to develop compounds which inhibit sPLA₂ mediated release of fatty acids (e.g., arachidonic acid). Such compounds would be of value in general treatment of conditions induced and/or maintained by overproduction of sPLA₂; such as septic shock, adult respiratory distress syndrome, pancreatitis, trauma, bronchial asthma, allergic rhinitis, rheumatoid arthritis, and etc.

Indolyl-3 substituted compounds having glyoxyamide functionality are described in U.S. Patent 2,825,734. This patent related to a process for converting glyoxyamides to 3-(2-amino-1-hydroxyethyl) indoles.

U.S. Patent No. 3,271,416 describes indolyl aliphatic acids as sun screening agents and intermediates. These acids may be -NH₂ substituted (see, definition of M in claim 1) and require 5- or 6- position substitution with nitrogen or sulfur functional groups.

U.S. Patent No. 2,890,223 and the article "The Synthesis of Tryptamines Related to Serotonin", by Elliott Shaw, J. Am. Chem. Soc., Vol. 77, 1955, (pp. 4319-4324) describe several amide derivatives of 3-indoleacetic acids. These compounds are used in the preparation of 5-lower alkoxy tryptamines and are stated to have utility for influencing serotonin related functions in the brain. In addition, the article, "Recherches en serie indolique. VI sur tryptamines substituées", by Marc Julia, Jean Igolen and Hanne Igolen, Bull. Soc. Chim. France, 1962, pp. 1060-1068, describes certain indole-3-acetamides and their conversion to tryptamine derivatives.

35 Selected indolyl amide type compounds have been described in the literature for the treatment of arthritic disorders. Thus, U.S. Patents No. 3,196,162; 3,242,162; 3,242,163; and 3,242,193 (see, Col. 3, lines 55-60, Example 56) describe indolyl aliphatic acids together with their related salts, esters, and amides. These compounds are closely related to compounds like indomethacin, have a substituted benzyl group at the 1 position and likely achieve their beneficial action being cyclooxygenase inhibitors.

40 The article, "Some Analogs of 1-p-Chlorobenzyl-5-methylindole-3-acetic Acid", by E. Walton, et al., J. Med. Chem., Vol. 11, 1968, pp. 1252-1255, describes the preparation of isomeric methyl 3-(1-p-chlorobenzyl-5-methoxy-3-methylindole-2) propionate.

The article, "2-Aryl-3-Indoleacetamides (FGN-1): A New Class of Potent and Specific Ligands for the Mitochondrial DBI Receptor (MDR)" by E. Romeo, et al. The Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics Vol. 262, No. 3, (pp. 971-978) describes certain 2-aryl-3-indolacetamides having research applications in mammalian central nervous systems.

It is desirable to develop new compounds and treatments for sPLA₂ induced diseases.

Summary of the Invention

50 This invention is a novel use of the class of compounds known as 1H-indole-3-acetamides to inhibit human sPLA₂ mediated release of fatty acids.

This invention is also novel classes of 1H-indole-3-acetamides having potent and selective effectiveness as inhibitors of human sPLA₂.

55 This invention is also pharmaceutical compositions containing the 1H-indole-3-acetamides of the invention.

This invention is also a method of preventing and treating septic shock using the 1H-indole-3-acetamides of the invention.

Detailed Description of the Invention

Definitions:

5 The 1H-indole-3-acetamides of the invention employ certain defining terms as follows:
 The term, "alkyl" by itself or as part of another substituent means, unless otherwise defined, a straight or branched chain monovalent hydrocarbon radical such as methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, tertiary butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, n-pentyl, and n-hexyl.

10 The term, "alkenyl" employed alone or in combination with other terms means a straight chain or branched monovalent hydrocarbon group having the stated number range of carbon atoms, and typified by groups such as vinyl, propenyl, crotonyl, isopentenyl, and various butenyl isomers.

15 The term, "halo" means fluoro, chloro, bromo, or iodo.

15 The term, "heterocyclic radical", refers to radicals derived from monocyclic or polycyclic, saturated or unsaturated, substituted or unsubstituted heterocyclic nuclei having 5 to 14 ring atoms and containing from 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur. Typical heterocyclic radicals are pyrrolyl, furanyl, thiophenyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolyl, phenylimidazolyl, triazolyl, isoxazolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, indolyl, carbazolyl, norharmanyl, azaindolyl, benzofuranyl, dibenzofuranyl, thianaphthene, dibenzothiophenyl, indazolyl, imidazo(1,2-A)pyridinyl, benzotriazolyl, anthranilyl, 1,2-benzisoxazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzothiazolyl, purinyl, pyridinyl, dipyridyl, phenylpyridinyl, benzylpyridinyl, pyrimidinyl, phenylpyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, 1,3,5-triazinyl, quinolinyl, phthalazinyl, quinazolinyl, quinoxalinyl.

20 The term, "carbocyclic radical" refers to radicals derived from a saturated or unsaturated, substituted or unsubstituted 5 to 14 membered organic nucleus whose ring forming atoms are solely carbon atoms. Typical carbocyclic radicals are cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, phenyl, naphthyl, norbornanyl, bicycloheptadienyl, toluyl, xylenyl, biphenyl, indenyl, acenaphthylene, and anthracenyl.

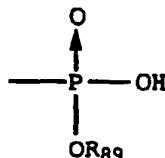
25 The term, "non-interfering substituent", refers to radicals suitable for substitution at positions 4, 5, 6, and/or 7 on the indole nucleus (as hereinafter depicted in Formula I) and radical(s) suitable for substitution on the heterocyclic radical and carbocyclic radical as defined above. Illustrative non-interfering radicals are C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkenyl, C₁-C₆ alkynyl, C₇-C₁₂ aralkyl, C₇-C₁₂ alkaryl, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, C₃-C₈ cycloalkenyl, phenyl, toluyl, xylenyl, biphenyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₆ alkynyl, C₂-C₁₂ alkoxyalkyl, C₂-C₁₂ alkoxyl, C₂-C₁₂ alkylcarbonyl, C₂-C₁₂ alkylcarbonylamino, C₂-C₁₂ alkoxyamino, C₂-C₁₂ alkoxyaminocarbonyl, C₂-C₁₂ alkylamino, C₁-C₆ alkylthio, C₂-C₁₂ alkylthiocarbonyl, C₁-C₆ alkylsulfinyl, C₁-C₆ haloalkoxy, C₁-C₆ haloalkylsulfonyl, C₁-C₆ haloalkyl, C₁-C₆ hydroxyalkyl, -(C=O)O(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(CH₂)_n-O-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), benzyl, phenoxy, phenoxythio, (-CONHSO₂R), -CHO, amino, amidino, bromo, carbamyl, carboxyl, -(CH₂)_n-CO₂H, chloro, cyano, cyanoguanidinyl, fluoro, guanidino, hydrazide, hydrazino, hydrazido, hydroxy, hydroxyamino, iodo, nitro, phosphono, -SO₃H, thiocetal, thiocarbonyl, trifluoromethyl, and C₁-C₆ carbonyl; where n is from 1 to 8.

35 The term, "amine", includes primary, secondary and tertiary amines.

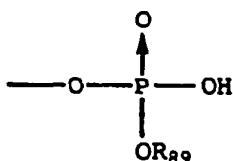
35 The term, "hydrocarbyl" means an organic group containing only carbon and hydrogen.

40 The term, "acidic group" means an organic group which when attached to an indole nucleus, through suitable connecting atoms, acts as a proton donor capable of hydrogen bonding. Illustrative of an acidic group are the following:
 -5-tetrazolyl,
 -SO₃H.

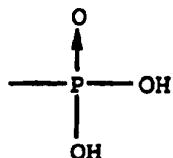
45



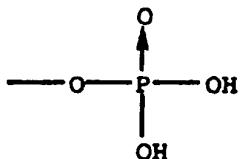
50



5

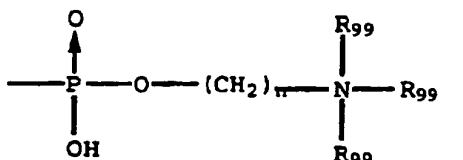


10



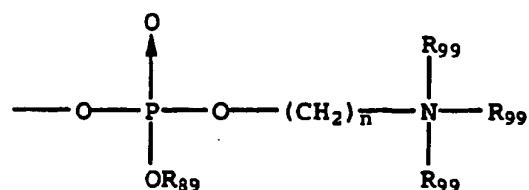
15

20



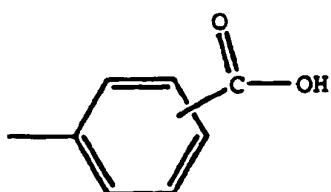
25

30



35

40

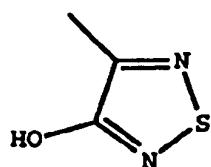


45

50



55



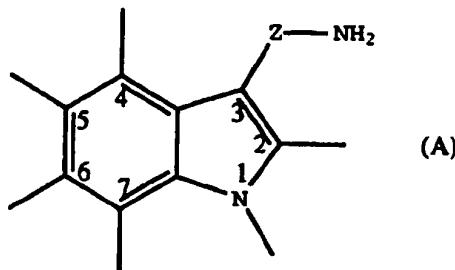
where n is 1 to 8, R_{39} is a metal or C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, and R_{39} is hydrogen or C_1 - C_{10} alkyl.

The compounds of the invention having utility for inhibiting human sPLA₂ mediated release of fatty acids are selected from "1H-indole-3-acetamides" having the general formula (A);

5

10

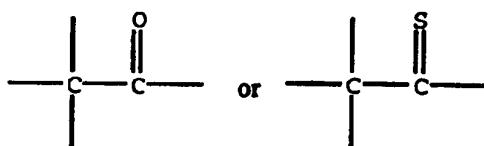
15



(A)

where Z is a divalent organic radical represented by

20



25

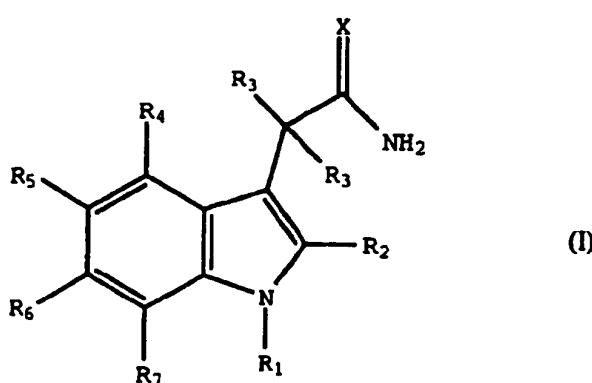
and the unsubstituted positions on the indolyl nucleus are independently satisfied by hydrogen or a non-interfering substituent. The indole nitrogen of formula (A) is preferably substituted by a $-(CH_2)_{1-5}$ - (carbocyclic radical) or a $-(CH_2)_{1-5}$ - (heterocyclic radical).

30 A preferred class of compounds according this invention are those having aryl, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkenyl, or alkynyl, groups on the indole nitrogen together with a relatively short (up to about 3 carbon atom size or equivalent) group at the 2-position (adjacent the indole nitrogen). Such 1H-indole-3-acetamides are represented by the formula (I), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof;

35

40

45



(I)

50 wherein :

X is oxygen or sulfur;

R_1 is selected from groups (i), (ii) and (iii) where;

(i) is C_6 - C_{20} alkyl, C_6 - C_{20} alkenyl, C_6 - C_{20} alkynyl, C_6 - C_{20} haloalkyl, C_4 - C_{12} cycloalkyl, or

(ii) is selected from the group; phenyl, naphthyl, indenyl, and biphenyl, where the members of the group are unsubstituted or substituted by the substituents halo, -CN, -CHO, -OH, nitro, -SH, C_1 - C_{10} alkylthio, C_1 - C_{10} alkoxy, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, carboxyl, amino, or hydroxyamino; or

(iii) is $-(CH_2)_n$ - (R_{30}) , or $-(NH)-(R_{31})$, where n is 1 to 8, and R_{30} is a group recited in (i), and R_{31} is selected

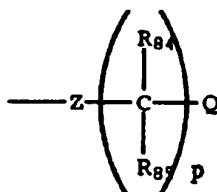
from a group recited in (i) or (ii);

R₂ is hydrogen, halo, C₁-C₃ alkyl, ethenyl, cyclopropyl, C₁-C₂ alkylthio, C₁-C₂ alkoxy, -CHO, or -CN; each R₃ is independently hydrogen, halo, or methyl;

5 R₄, R₅, R₆, and R₇ are each independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkenyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkynyl, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, or any two adjacent hydrocarbyl groups in the set R₄, R₅, R₆, and R₇, combine with the ring carbon atoms to which they are attached to form a 5 or 6 membered substituted or unsubstituted carbocyclic ring; or C₁-C₁₀ haloalkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, C₁-C₁₀ haloalkoxy, C₄-C₈ cycloalkoxy, phenoxy, halo, hydroxy, carboxyl, -SH, -CN, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, arylothio, thioacetal, -C(O)O(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl), hydrazide, hydrazino, hydrazido, -NH₂, -NO₂, -NR₈₂R₈₃, and -C(O)NR₈₂R₈₃, where, R₈₂ and R₈₃ are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl.

10 C₁-C₁₀ hydroxyalkyl, or taken together with N, R₈₂ and R₈₃ form a 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring; or a group having the formula;

15



20

where,

R₈₄ and R₈₅ are each independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, hydroxy, or R₈₄ and R₈₅ taken together are =O;

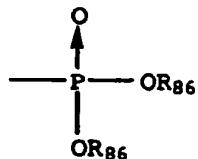
25

p is 1 to 5,

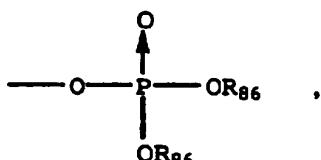
Z is a bond, -O-, -N(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl)-, -NH-, or -S-; and

Q is -CON(R₈₂R₈₃), -5-tetrazolyl, -SO₃H,

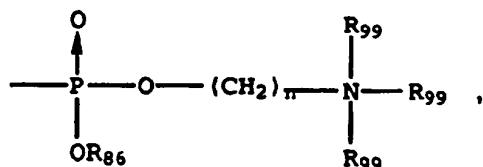
30



35

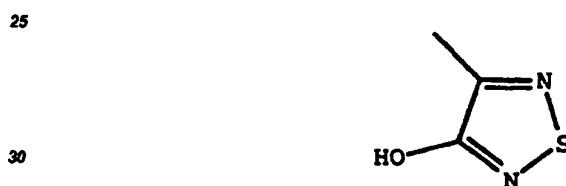
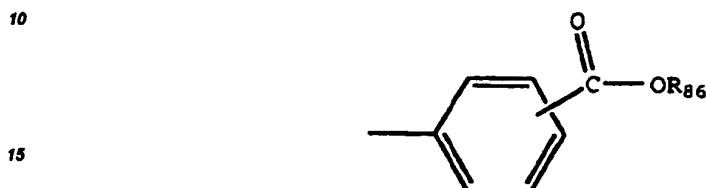
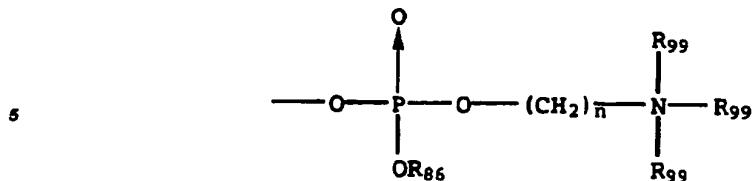


45



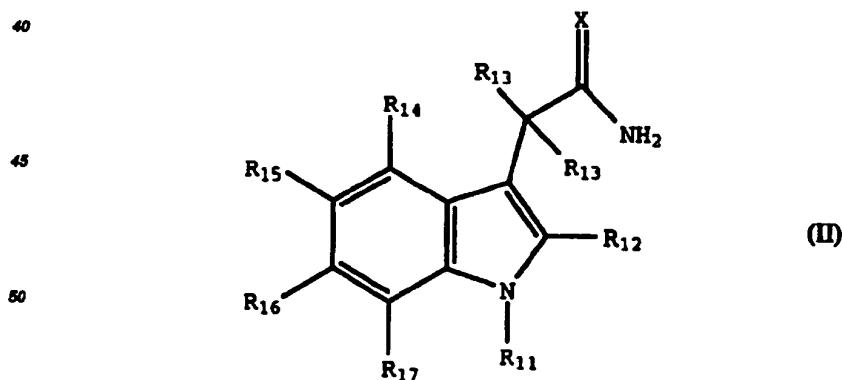
50

55



where n is 1 to 8, R₈₆ is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₉₉ is selected from hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl.

35 Another preferred class of indoles according to this invention are those having alkyl, aryl, or benzyl groups or their derivatives on the indole nitrogen. Such 1H-Indole-3-acetamides are represented by the formula (II), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof,



55 wherein :

X is oxygen or sulfur;

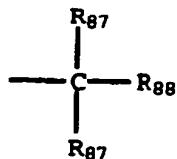
R₁₁ is selected from groups (i), (ii) (iii) and (iv) where;

(i) is C₆-C₂₀ alkyl, C₆-C₂₀ alkenyl, C₆-C₂₀ alkynyl, C₆-C₂₀ haloalkyl, C₄-C₁₂ cycloalkyl, or

EP 0 620 215 A1

(ii) is aryl or aryl substituted by halo, nitro, -CN, -CHO, -OH, -SH, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, carboxyl, amino, or hydroxyamino; or
 (iii) is -(CH₂)_n-(R₆₀), or -(NH)-(R₆₁), where n is 1 to 8, and R₆₀ is a group recited in (i), and R₆₁ is selected from a group recited in (i) or (ii);
 5 (iv) is

10



15

where R₆₇ is hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₆₈ is selected from the group; phenyl, naphthyl, indenyl, and biphenyl, unsubstituted or substituted by halo, -CN, -CHO, -OH, -SH, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, phenyl, nitro, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ haloalkyl, carboxyl, amino, hydroxyamino; or a substituted or unsubstituted 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring;

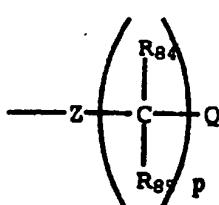
20

R₁₂ is halo, C₁-C₂ alkylthio, or C₁-C₂ alkoxy;

each R₁₃ is independently hydrogen, halo, or methyl;

R₁₄, R₁₅, R₁₆, and R₁₇ are each independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkenyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkynyl, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, or any two adjacent hydrocarbyl groups in the set R₁₄, R₁₅, R₁₆, and R₁₇, combine with the ring carbon atoms to which they are attached to form a 5 or 8 membered substituted or unsubstituted carbocyclic ring; or C₁-C₁₀ haloalkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, C₁-C₁₀ haloalkoxy, C₄-C₈ cycloalkoxy, phenoxy, halo, hydroxy, carboxyl, -SH, -CN, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, arylthio, thioacetal, -C(O)O(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl), hydrazide, hydrazino, hydrazido, -NH₂, -NO₂, -NR₆₂R₆₃, and -C(O)NR₆₂R₆₃, where, R₆₂ and R₆₃ are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ hydroxyalkyl, or taken together with N, R₆₂ and R₆₃ form a 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring; or a group having the formula;

30



35

where,

40 R₆₄ and R₆₅ are each independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, hydroxy, or R₆₄ and R₆₅ taken together are =O;

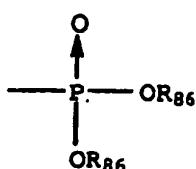
p is 1 to 5;

Z is a bond, -O-, -N(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl)-, -NH-, or -S-; and

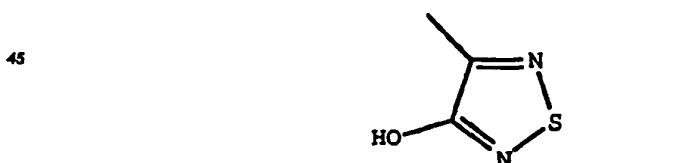
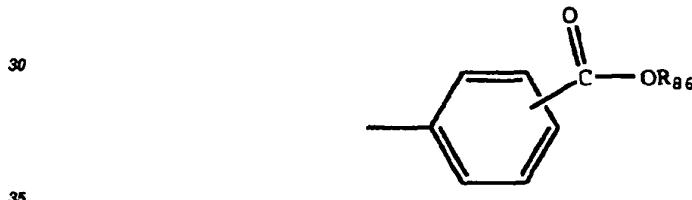
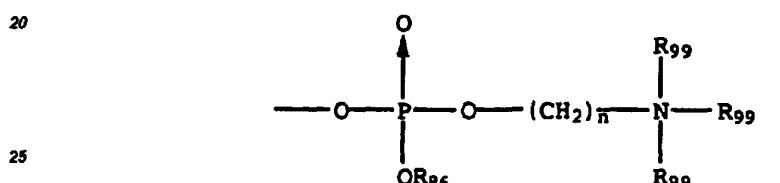
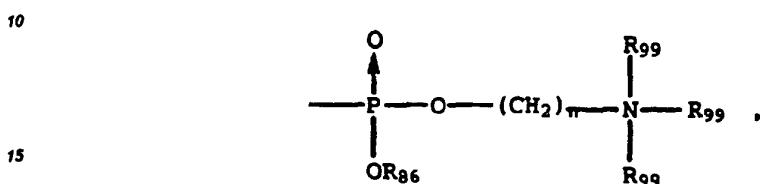
Q is -CON(R₆₂R₆₃), -5-tetrazolyl, -SO₃H,

45

50

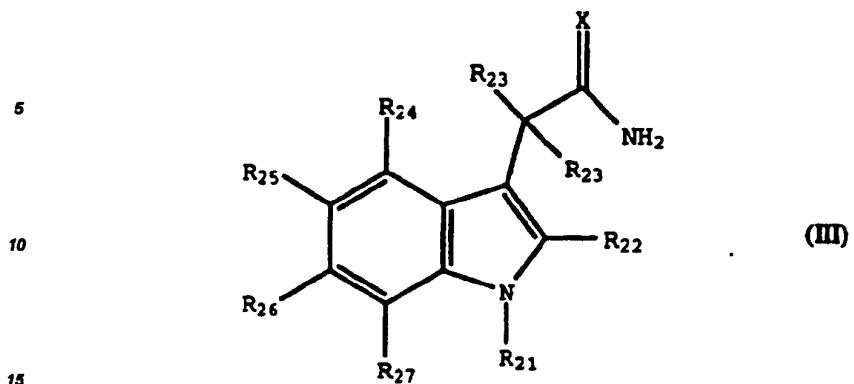


55



where n is from 1 to 8, R₈₆ is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₉₉ is selected from hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl.

Another preferred group of indoles according to this invention are those having two key substituents; namely, (1) an acidic group at one or both the 4 or 5 positions (viz., R₂₄ and R₂₅ as depicted in formula III), and (2) a benzyl or substituted benzyl group on the indole nitrogen. Such 1H-indole-3-acetamides are represented by the formula (III), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof,



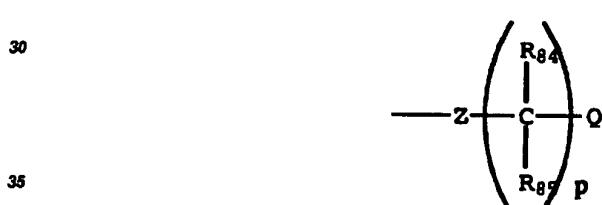
wherein :

X is oxygen or sulfur.

20 R_{21} is $-(CH_2)_n-R_{60}$, or $-(NH)-R_{60}$, where n is 1 to 8, and R_{60} is aryl or aryl substituted by C_1-C_{10} alkyl, C_1-C_{10} alkenyl, C_1-C_{10} alkynyl, C_1-C_{10} haloalkyl, C_4-C_{12} cycloalkyl, C_1-C_{10} hydroxyalkyl, carboxyl, halo, $-CN$, $-CHO$, $-OH$, $-SH$, C_1-C_{10} alkylthio, C_1-C_{10} alkoxyl, carboxyl, amino, or hydroxyamino, or a substituted or unsubstituted 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring;

R_{22} is hydrogen, halo, C_1 - C_3 alkyl, ethenyl, cyclopropyl, C_1 - C_2 alkylthio, C_1 - C_2 alkoxy, -CHO, -CN; each R_{23} is independently hydrogen, halo, or methyl;

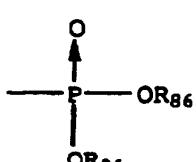
25 **R₂₄ and R₂₅ are each independently hydrogen, halo, or methyl.**
R₂₄ and R₂₅ are each independently selected from (a) and (b) where;
(a) is hydrogen, halo, alkyl or alkoxy, and;

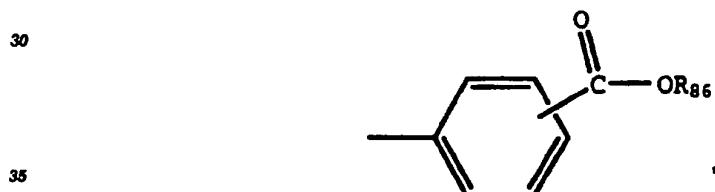
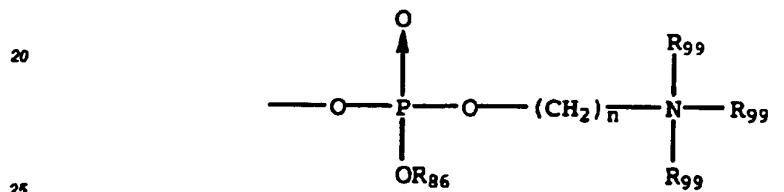
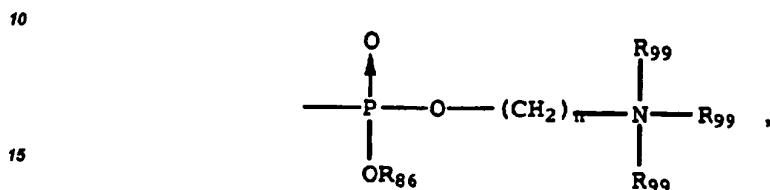
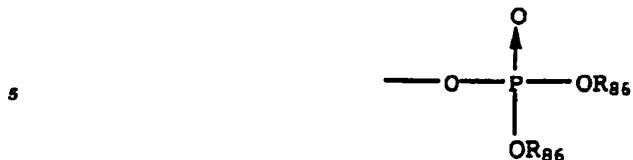


with the proviso that at least one of R_{24} and R_{25} must be selected from (b), and where:

R₈₄ and R₈₅ are each independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, hydroxy, or R₈₄ and R₈₅ taken together are =O;

is 1 to 5, is a bond, $-\text{O}-$, $-\text{N}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10} \text{ alkyl})-$, $-\text{NH}-$, or $-\text{S}-$; and is $-\text{CON}(\text{R}_1\text{R}_2)-$, $-\text{S}-\text{tetrazolyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{H}$.





where n is 1 to 8, R₈₆ is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₉₉ is selected from hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl.

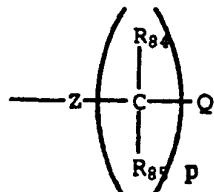
55 R₂₆ and R₂₇ are each independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkenyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkynyl, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, or the adjacent hydrocarbyl groups in the groups R₂₆ and R₂₇ combine with the ring carbon atoms to which they are attached to form a 5 or 6 membered substituted or unsubstituted carbocyclic ring; or C₁-C₁₀ haloalkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, C₁-C₁₀ haloalkoxy, C₄-C₈ cycloalkoxy, phenoxy, halo, hydroxy, carboxyl, -SH,

EP 0 620 215 A1

-CN, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, aryli thi, thioacetal, -C(O)O(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl), hydrazide, hydrazin, hydrazido, -NH₂, -NO₂, -NR₆₂R₆₃, and -C(O)NR₆₂R₆₃, where, R₆₂ and R₆₃ are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ hydroxyalkyl, or taken together with N, R₆₂ and R₆₃ form a 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring; or a group having the formula;

5

10



15 where,

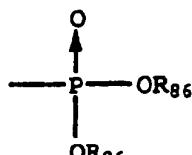
R₈₄ and R₈₅ are each independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, hydroxy, or R₈₄ and R₈₅ taken together are =O;

P is 1 to 5,

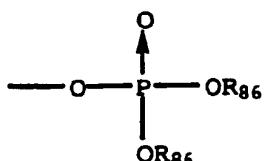
Z is a bond, -O-, -N(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl)-, -NH-, or -S-; and

20 Q is -CON(R₆₂R₆₃), -5-tetrazolyl, -SO₃H,

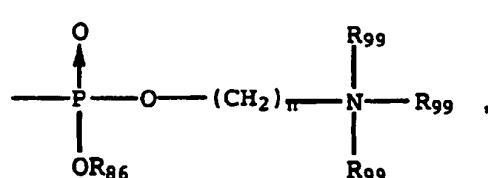
25



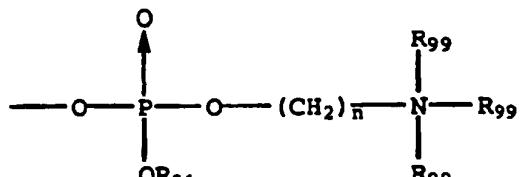
30



35

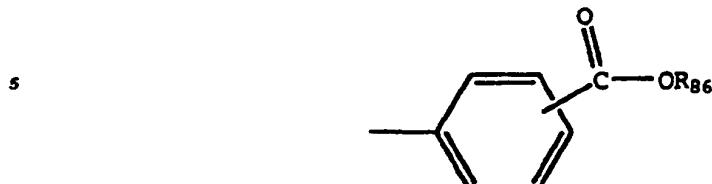


45



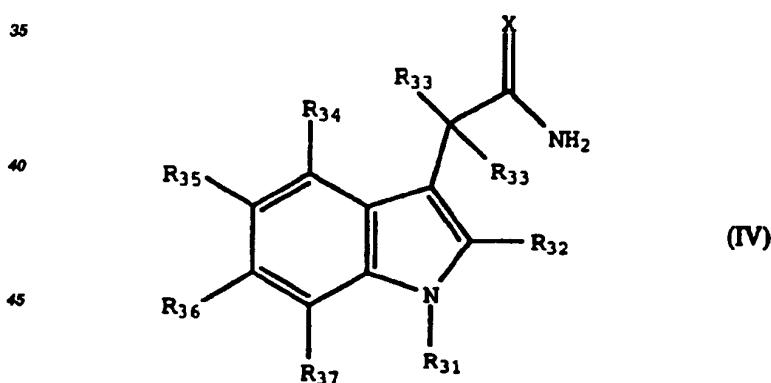
50

55



where n is 1 to 8, R_{86} is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C_1-C_{10} alkyl, and R_{99} is selected from hydrogen or C_1-C_{10} alkyl.

Another preferred class of indoles according to this invention are those having two key substituents; namely, (1) an acidic group at one or both the 4 or 5 positions (viz., R_{34} and R_{35} as depicted in formula IV, and (2) a small substituent containing halogen, sulfur, or oxygen at the 2-position of the indole ring (R_{32} of formula IV). Such 1H-indole-3-acetamides are represented by the formula (IV), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof,



50 wherein ;

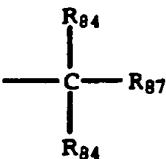
X is oxygen or sulfur;

R_{31} is selected from groups (i), (ii) and (iii) where;

(i) is C_6-C_{20} alkyl, C_6-C_{20} alkenyl, C_6-C_{20} alkynyl, C_6-C_{20} haloalkyl, C_4-C_{12} cycloalkyl, or

(ii) is aryl or aryl substituted by halo, -CN, -CHO, -OH, -SH, C_1-C_{10} alkylthio, C_1-C_{10} alkoxy, carboxyl, amino, or hydroxyamino;

(iii) is



where R_{84} is hydrogen or $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkyl, and R_{87} is selected from the group: phenyl, naphthyl, indenyl and biphenyl, unsubstituted or substituted by halo, -CN, -CHO, -OH, -SH, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkylthio, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkoxy, carboxyl, amino, hydroxyamino; or a substituted or unsubstituted 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring;

10 R_{32} is halo, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_2$ alkylthio, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_2$ alkoxy;

each R_{33} is independently hydrogen, halo, or methyl;

15 R_{34} and R_{35} are each independently selected from (a) and (b) where;

(a) is hydrogen, halo, alkyl, or alkoxy, and

(b) is a group having the formula;



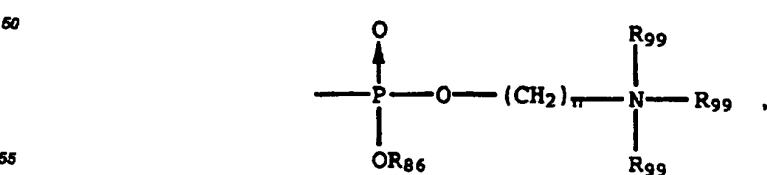
25 with the proviso that at least one of R_{34} and R_{35} must be selected from (b), and where;

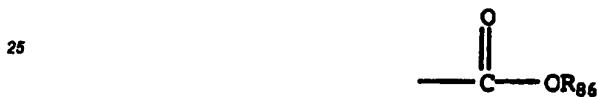
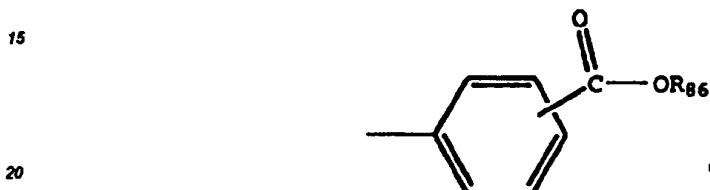
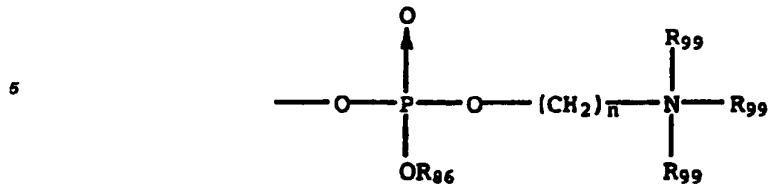
R_{84} and R_{85} are each independently selected from hydrogen, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkyl, hydroxy, or R_{84} and R_{85} taken together are =O;

30 P is 1 to 5,

Z is a bond, -O-, -N($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkyl)-, -NH-, or -S-; and

Q is -CON($\text{R}_{82}\text{R}_{83}$), -5-tetrazolyl, -SO₃H,





where n is 1 to 8, R86 is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R99 is selected from hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl.

R₃₈ and R₃₇ are each independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkenyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkynyl, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, or the adjacent hydrocarbyl groups in the groups R₃₈ and R₃₇ combine with the ring carbon atoms to which they are attached to form a 5 or 6 membered substituted or unsubstituted carbocyclic ring; or C₁-C₁₀ haloalkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, C₁-C₁₀ haloalkoxy, C₄-C₈ cycloalkoxy, phenoxy, halo, hydroxy, carboxyl, -SH, -CN, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, aryliothio, thioacetal, -C(O)O(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl), hydrazide, hydrazino, hydrazido, -NH₂, -NO₂, -NR₆₂R₆₃, and -C(O)NR₆₂R₆₃, where, R₆₂ and R₆₃ are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ hydroxyalkyl, or taken together with N, R₆₂ and R₆₃ form a 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring; or a group having the formula;



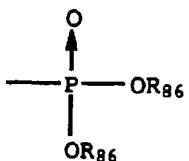
where,

R₈₄ and R₈₅ are each independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, hydroxy, or R₈₄ and R₈₅ taken

together are =O;
 P is 1 to 5,
 Z is a bond, -O-, -N(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl)-, -NH-, or -S-; and
 Q is -CON(R₈₂R₈₃), -5-tetrazolyl, -SO₂H,

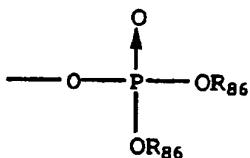
5

10



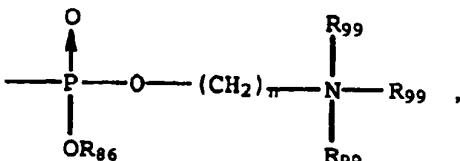
15

20



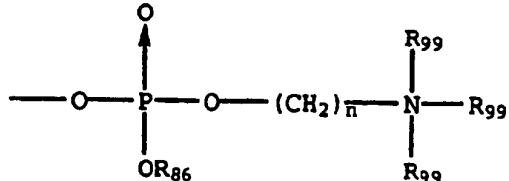
25

30

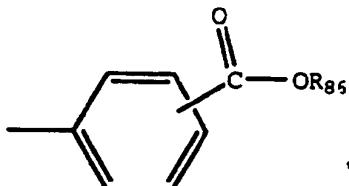


35

45

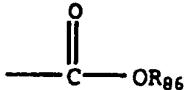


40

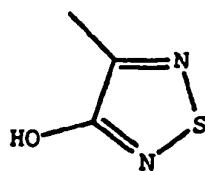


50

65



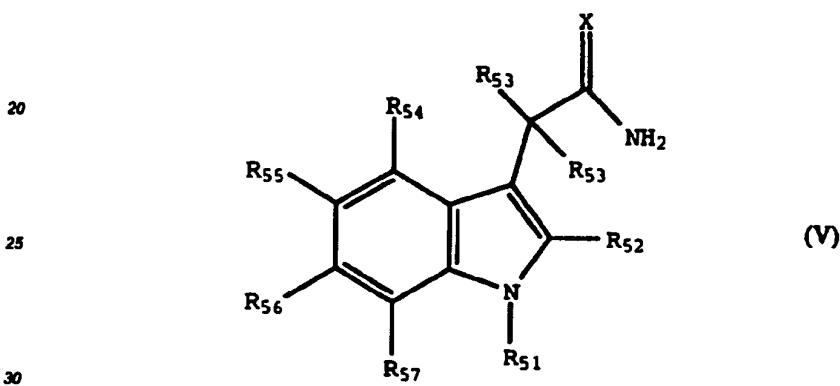
5



10 where n is 1 to 8, R₅₅ is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₅₆ is selected from hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl.

A most preferred class of indole compounds according to this invention are those wherein X is oxygen in formula V, the nitrogen of the indole ring is substituted by a benzyl or biphenyl methyl group, and the 2-position on the indole ring (viz., R₅₂ in formula V) is substituted with either halo, methylthio, or C₁-C₃ alkyl. Such 1H-indole-3-acetamides are represented by the formula (V), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

15

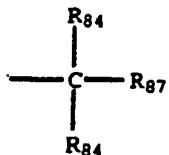


wherein;

X is oxygen;

R₅₁ is

35



40

where,

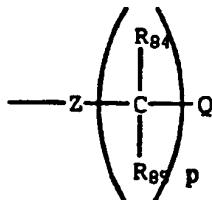
45 R₅₂ is hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₅₇ is -(CH₂)_m-(phenyl) or -(CH₂)_n-(biphenyl), wherein m is 0 to 2 and the phenyl or biphenyl radicals are unsubstituted or substituted by halo, -CN, -CHO, -OH, nitro, phenyl, -SH, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, carboxyl, amino, hydroxymino or a substituted or unsubstituted 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring;

R₅₂ is halo, methylthio, cyclopropyl, or C₁-C₃ alkyl;
each R₅₃ is hydrogen or halo;

50 R₅₄ and R₅₅ are each independently selected from (a) and (b) where;
(a) is hydrogen, and;
(b) is a group having the formula;

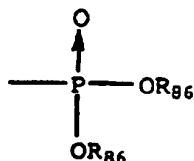
55

5

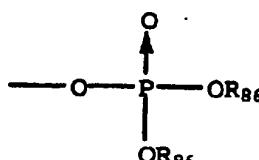


10 with the proviso that at least one of R_{84} and R_{85} must be selected from (b), and where:
 R_{84} and R_{85} are each independently selected from hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, hydroxy, or R_{84} and R_{85} taken together are $=O$;
15 p is 1 to 5,
 Z is a bond, $-O-$, $-N(C_1-C_{10} \text{ alkyl})-$, $-NH-$ or $-S-$; and
 Q is -5-tetrazolyl , $-SO_3H$,

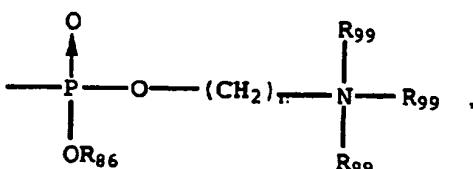
20



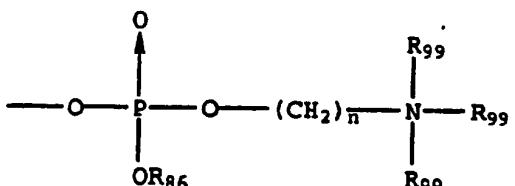
25



30

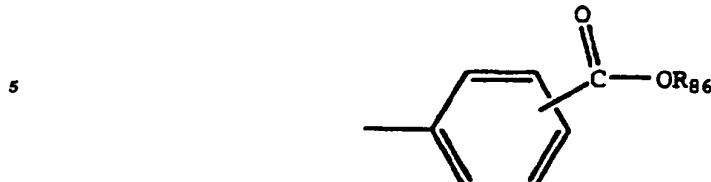


40

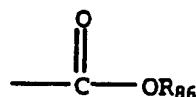


50

55



10



where n is 1 to 8, R₈₅ is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₈₆ is selected from hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl.

20 R₅₆ and R₅₇ are each independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, aryl, aralkyl, C₁-C₁₀ haloalkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, C₁-C₁₀ haloalkoxy, phenoxy, halo, hydroxy, carboxyl, or a group having the formula;



30

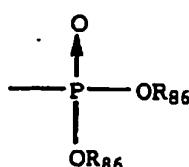
where,

R₈₄ and R₈₅ are each independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, hydroxy, or R₈₄ and R₈₅ taken together are =O;

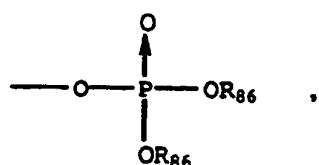
p is 1 to 5,

35 Z is a bond, -O-, -N(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl)-, -NH-, or -S-; and

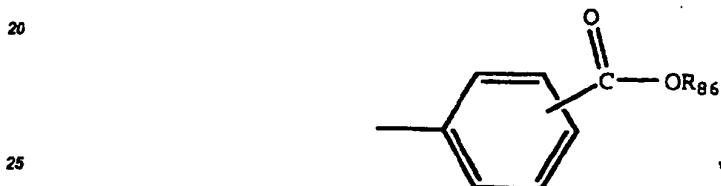
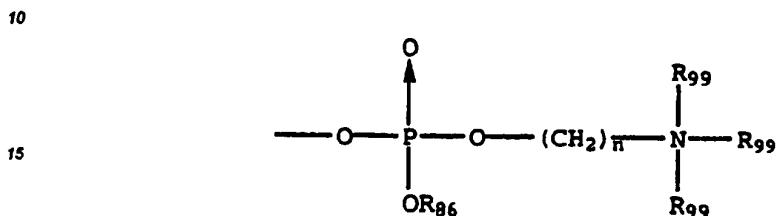
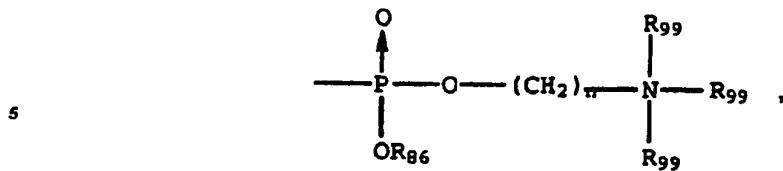
Q is -5-tetrazolyl, -SO₃H,



45



55



where n is 1 to 8, R_{86} is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, and R_{99} is selected from hydrogen or C_1 - C_{10} alkyl.

35 Illustrative of the novel compounds having utility in this invention are the following:
4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid, a compound represented by the formula:

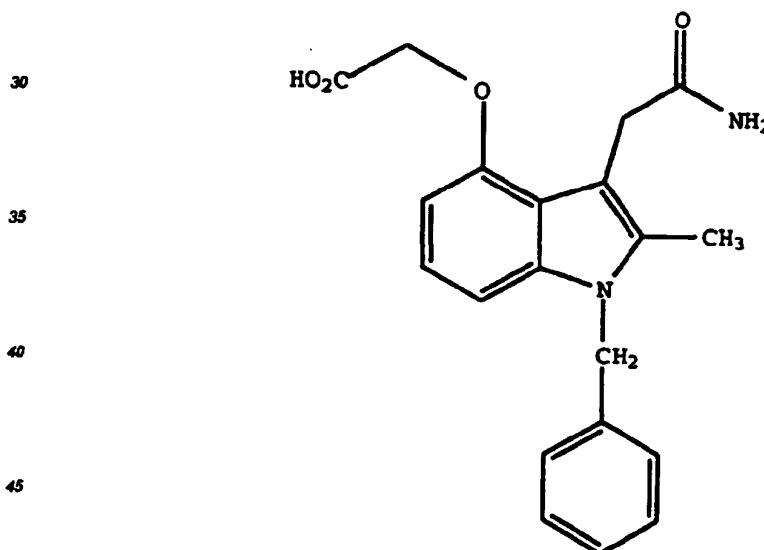
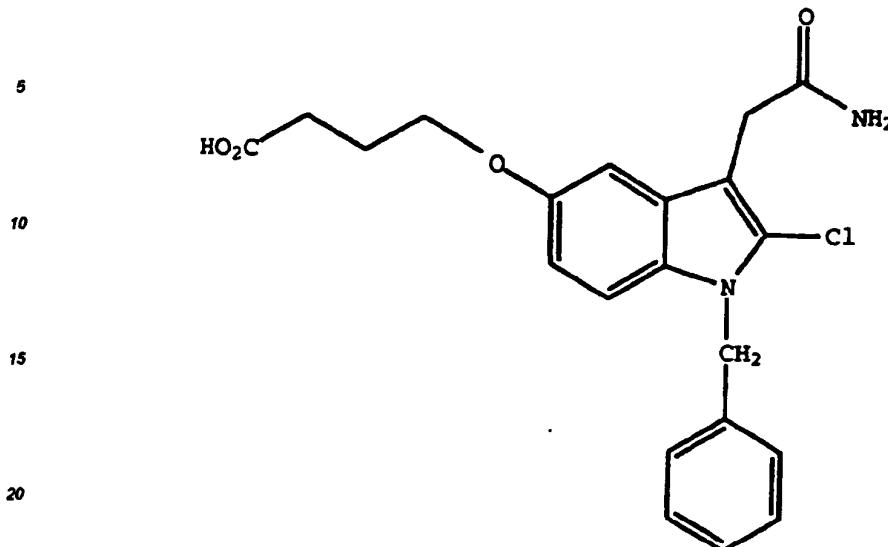
40

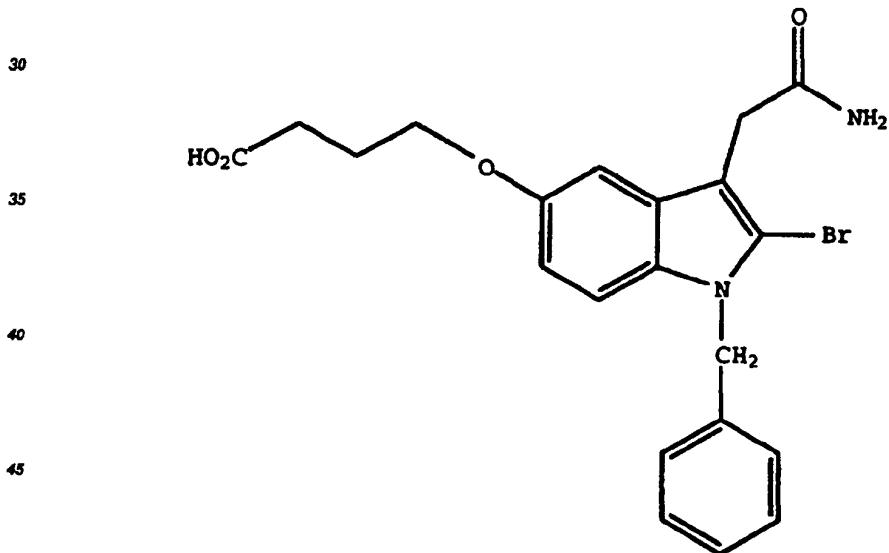
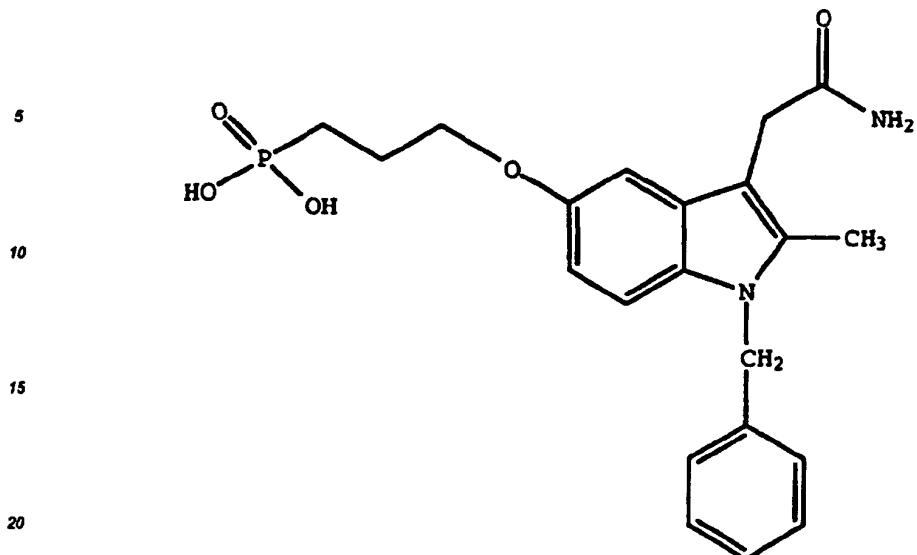
45

50

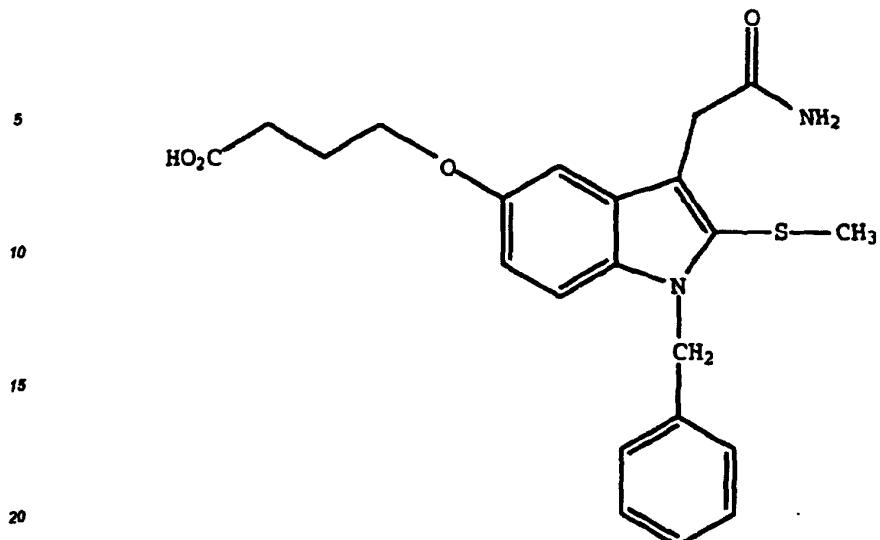
55

20

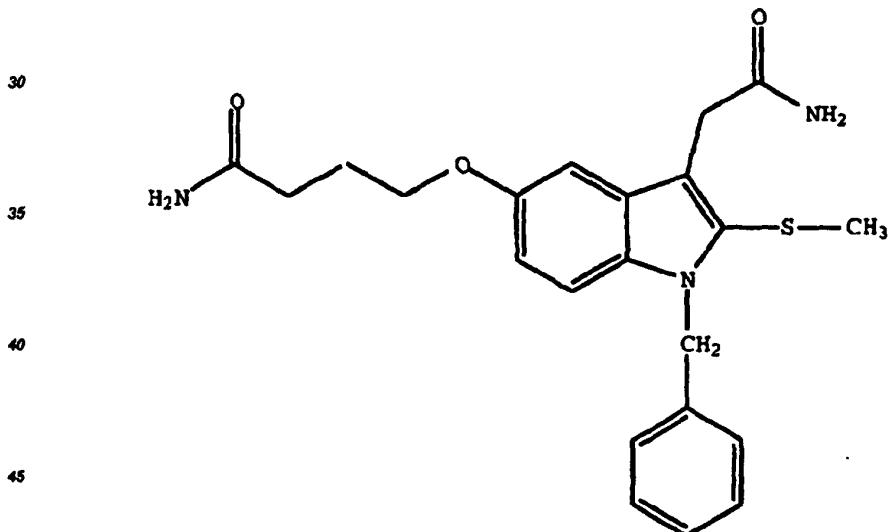




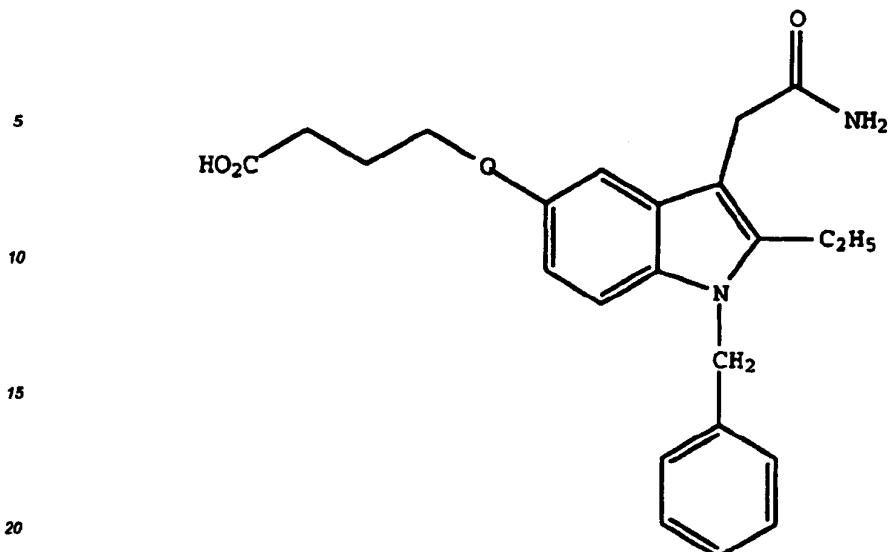
55



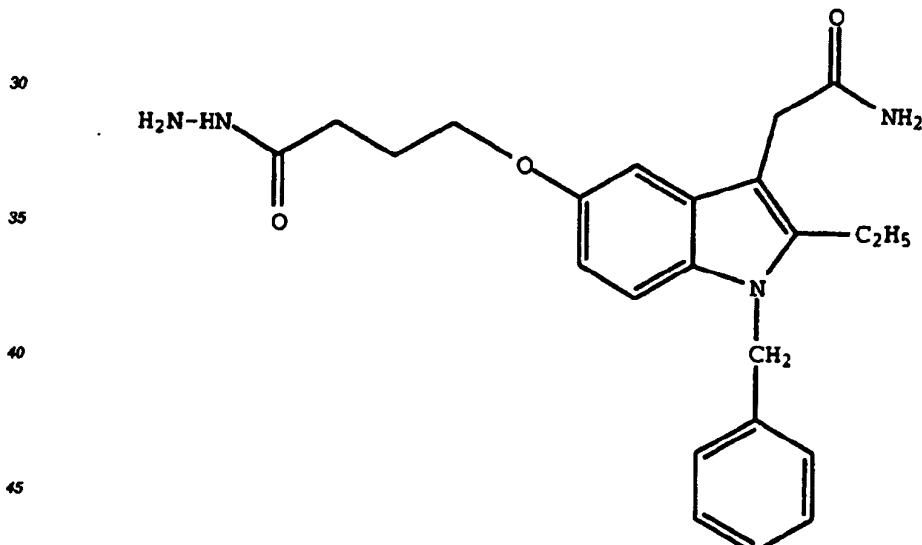
5-(4-Amino-4-oxobutoxy)-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, a compound represented
25 by the formula:



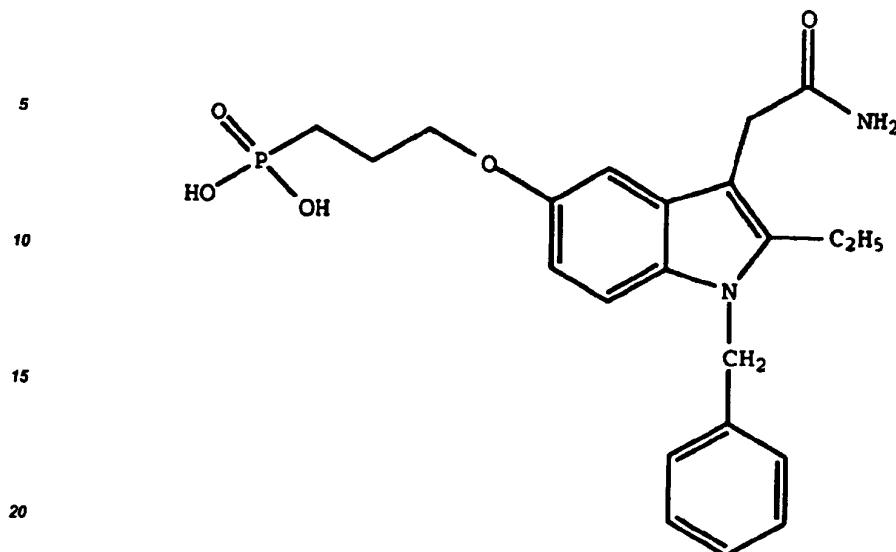
50 [4-[(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid, a compound represented
by the formula:



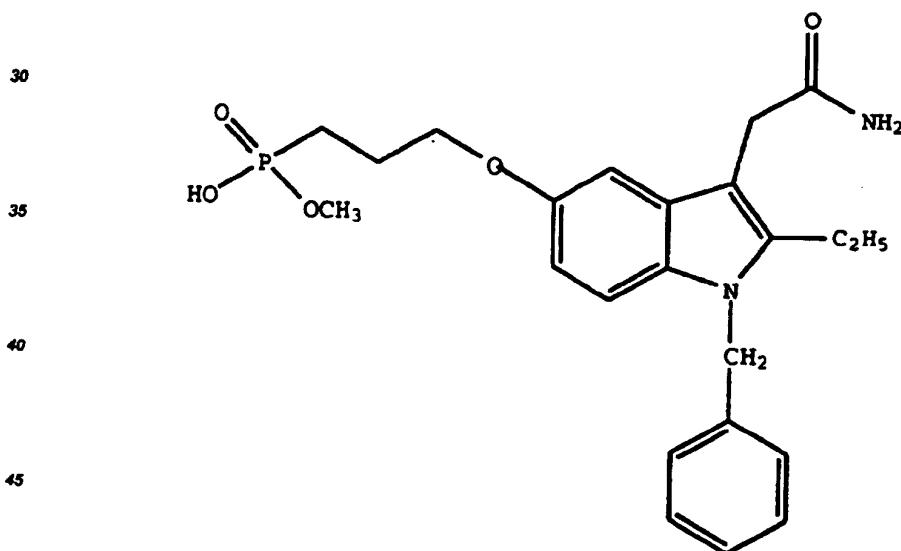
25 2-Ethyl-5-(4-hydrazino-4-oxobutoxy)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, a compound represented by
the formula:



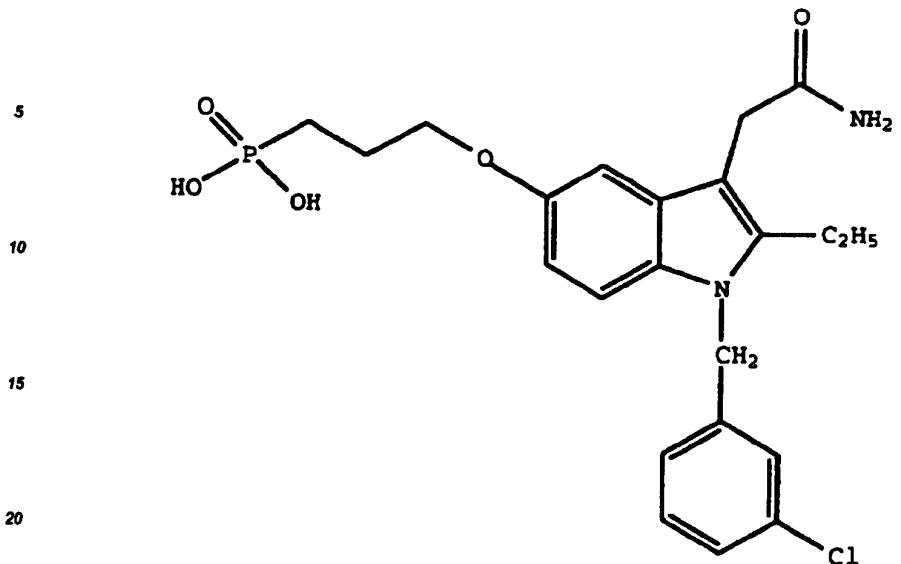
50 [3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid, a compound
represented by the formula:



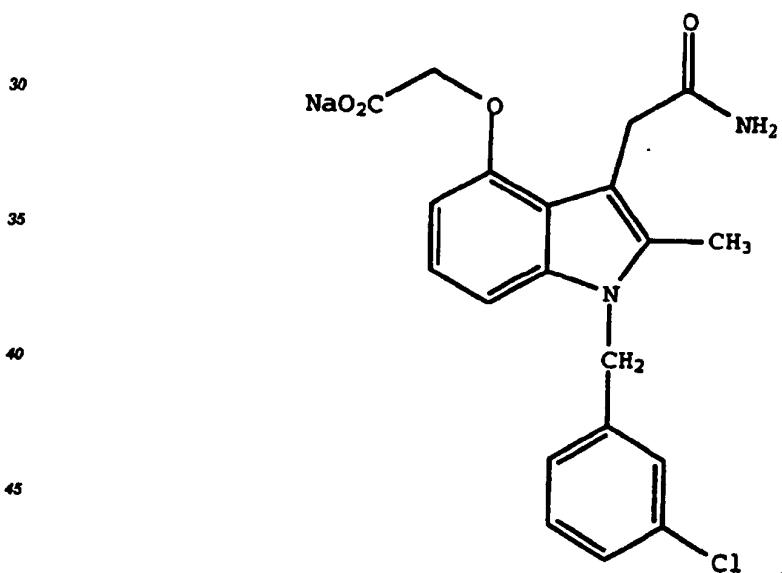
[3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid monomethyl ester, a compound represented by the formula:



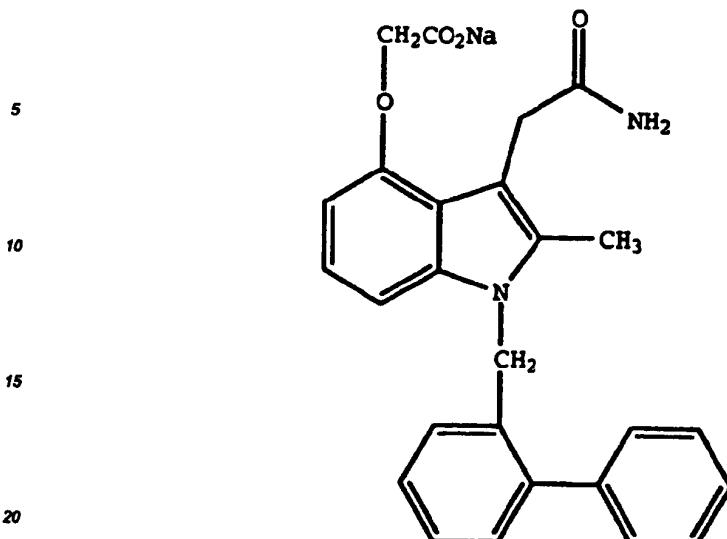
55 [3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid, a compound represented by the formula:



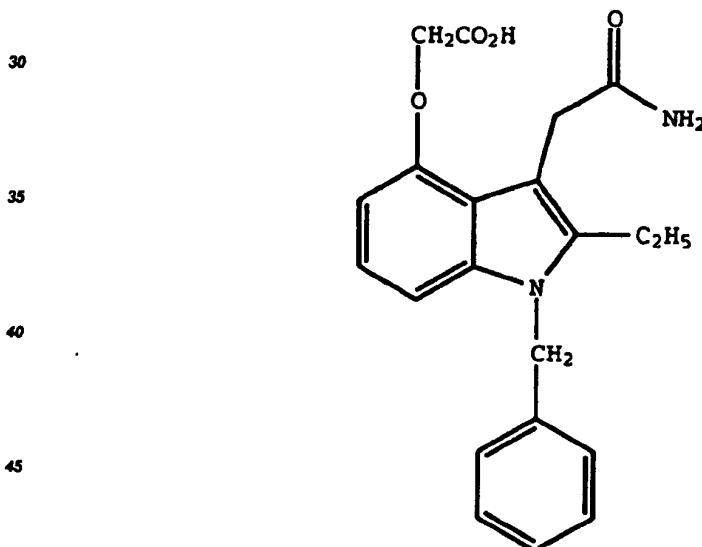
25 **[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-methyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]methyl]acetic acid sodium salt, a compound represented by the formula:**



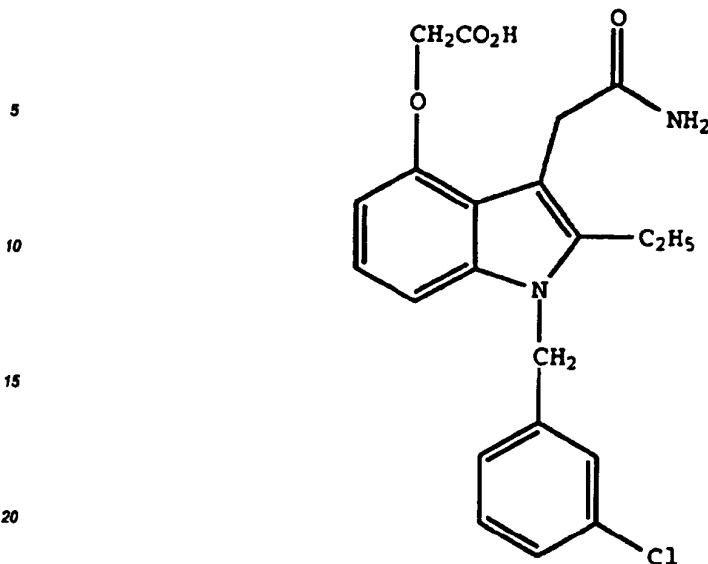
50 **[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-ylmethyl]-2-methyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid sodium salt, a compound represented by the formula:**



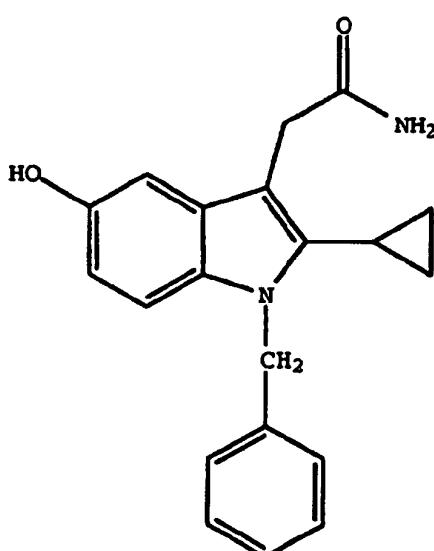
25 **[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid, a compound represented by the formula:**



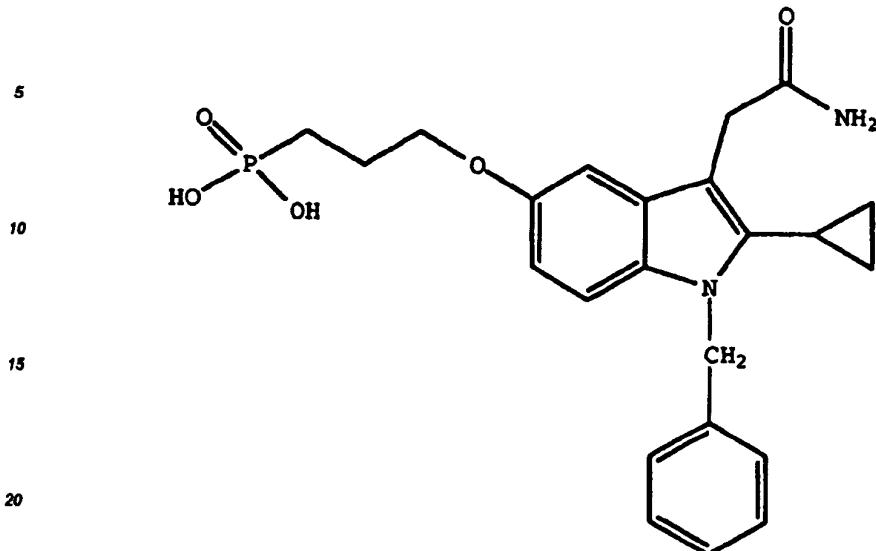
50 **2-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid, a compound represented by the formula:**



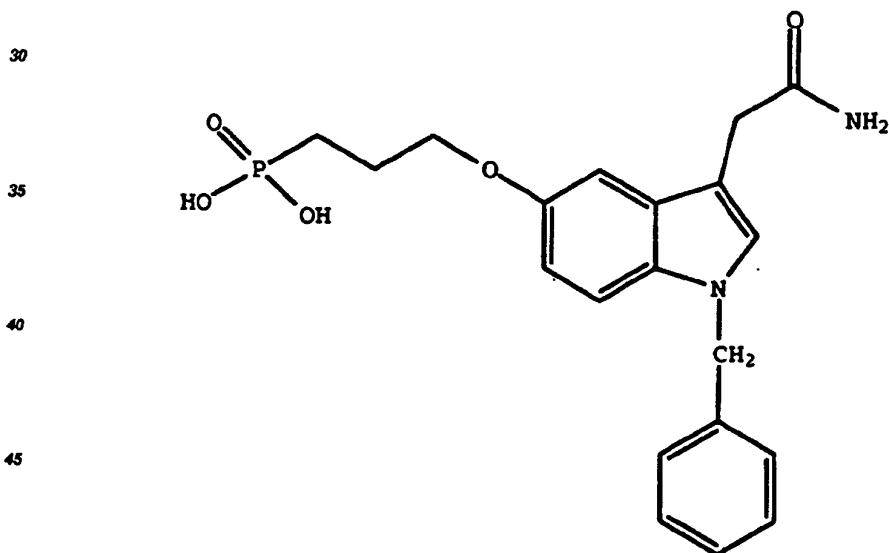
2-Cyclopropyl-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, a compound represented by the formula:



[3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-cyclopropyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yloxy]propyl]phosphonic acid, a compound represented by the formula:

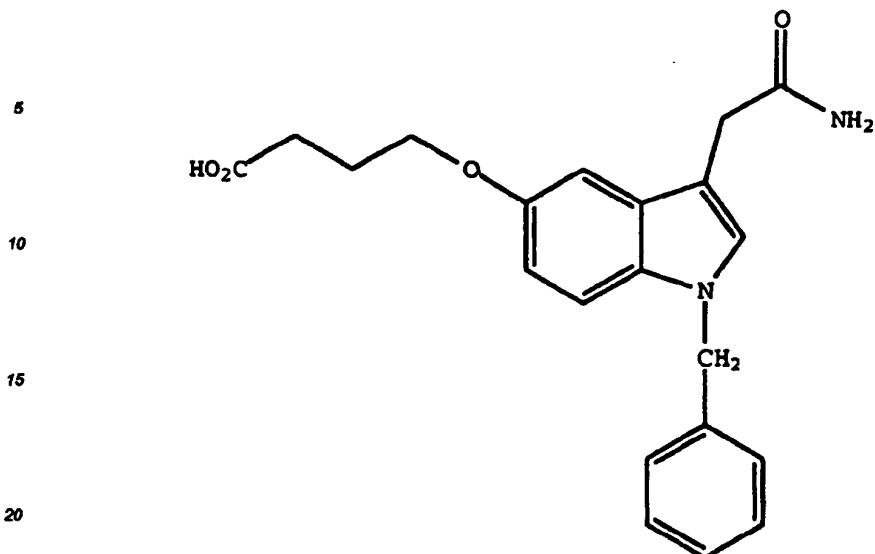


25 [3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid, a compound represented by the formula:

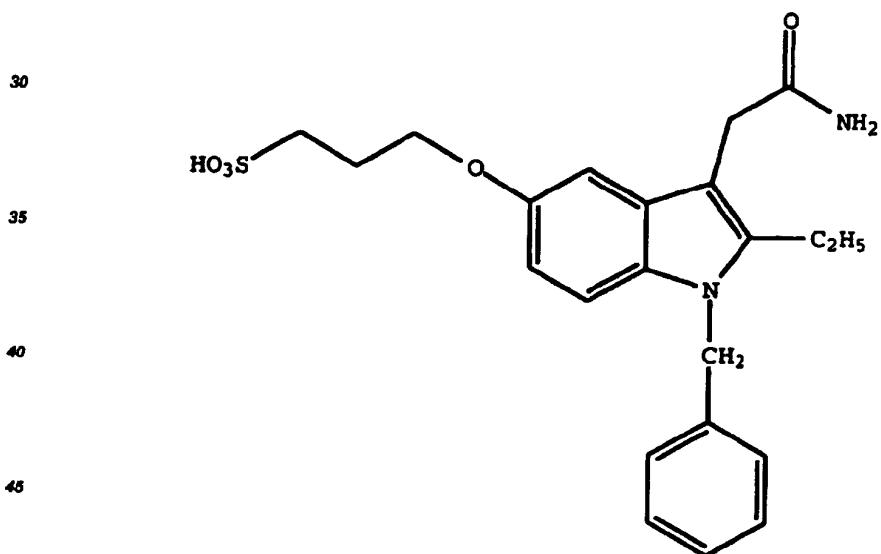


50 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid, a compound represented by the formula:

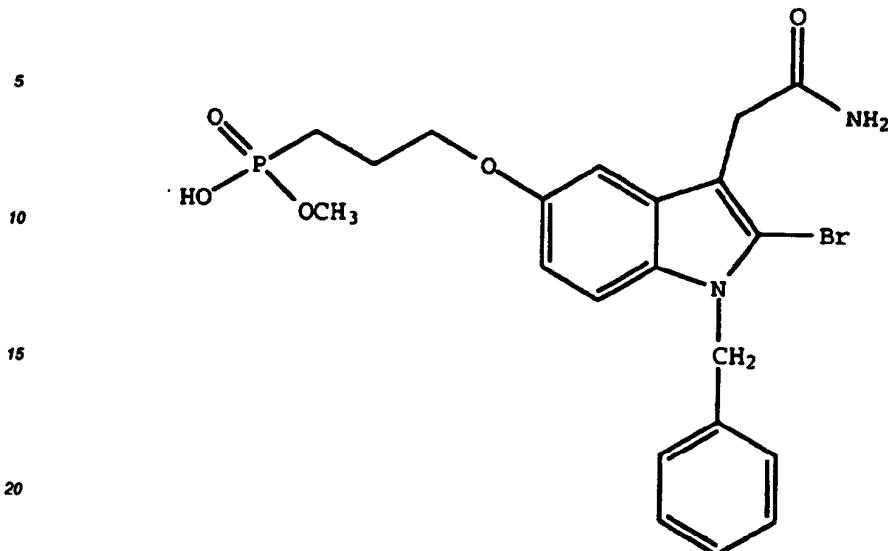
55



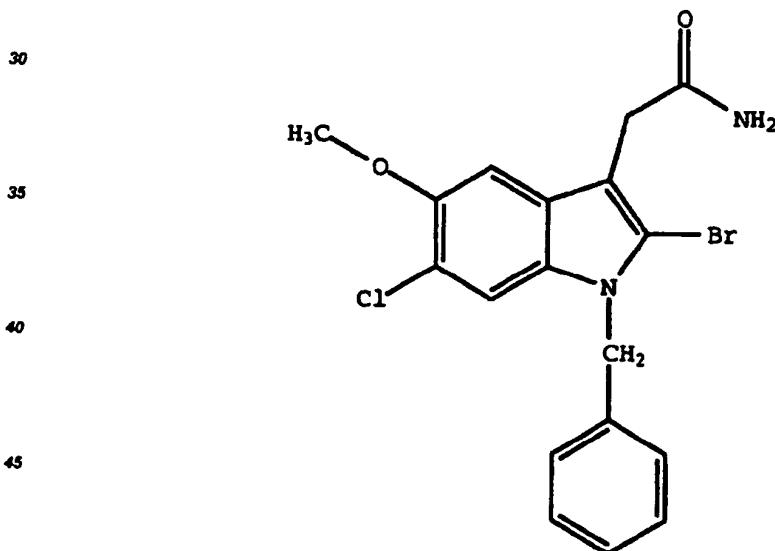
25 3-[4-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propane]sulfonic acid, a compound
represented by the formula:



50 3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid monomethyl ester, a compound represented by the formula:

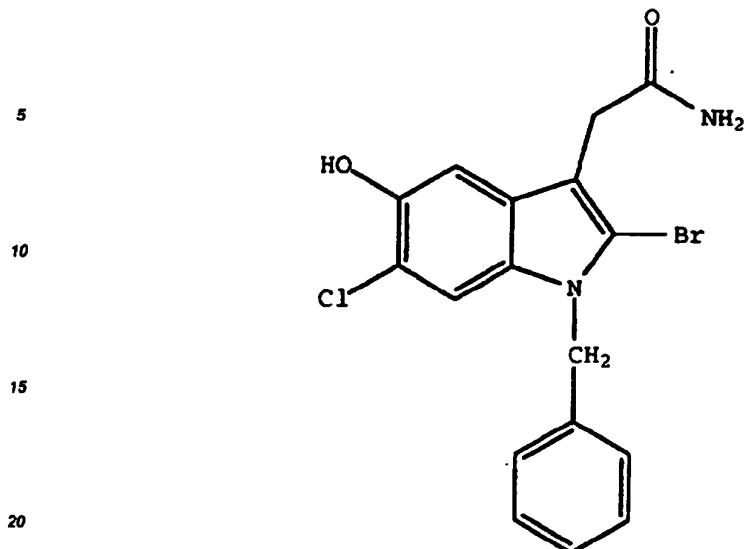


25 2-Bromo-6-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, a compound represented by the formula:
la:

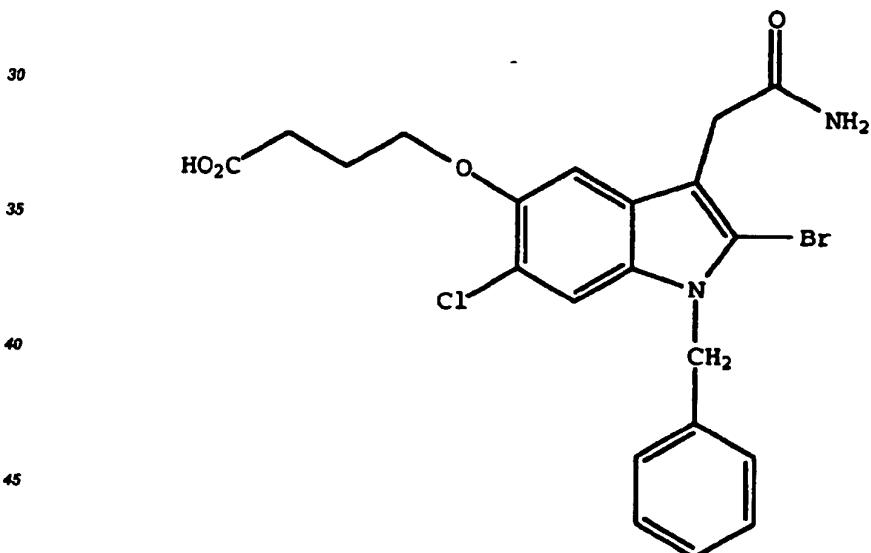


50 2-Bromo-6-chloro-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, a compound represented by the formula:
lb:

55

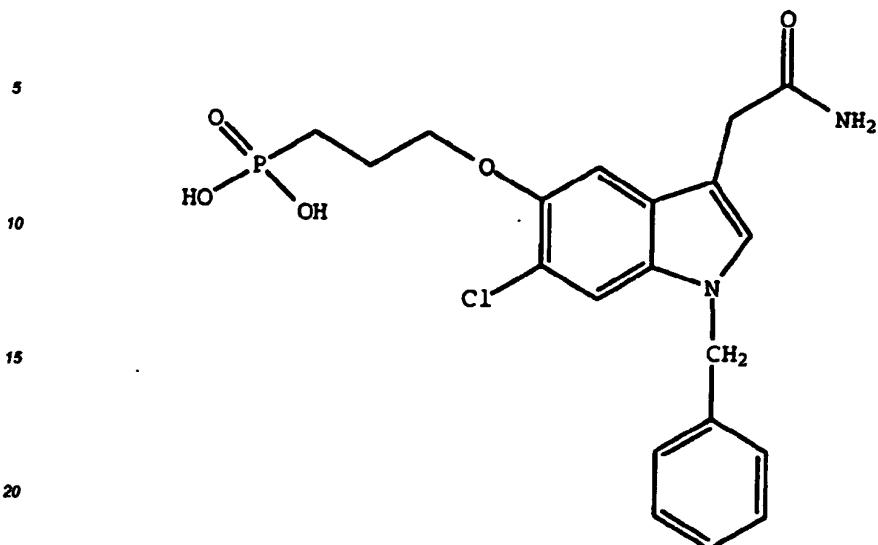


25 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxybutanoic acid, a compound
represented by the formula:

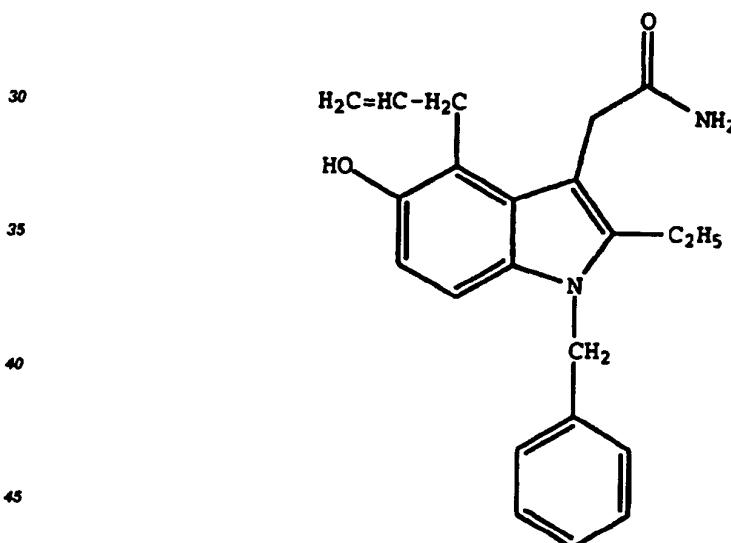


50 3-[4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propylphosphonic acid, a com-
pound represented by the formula:

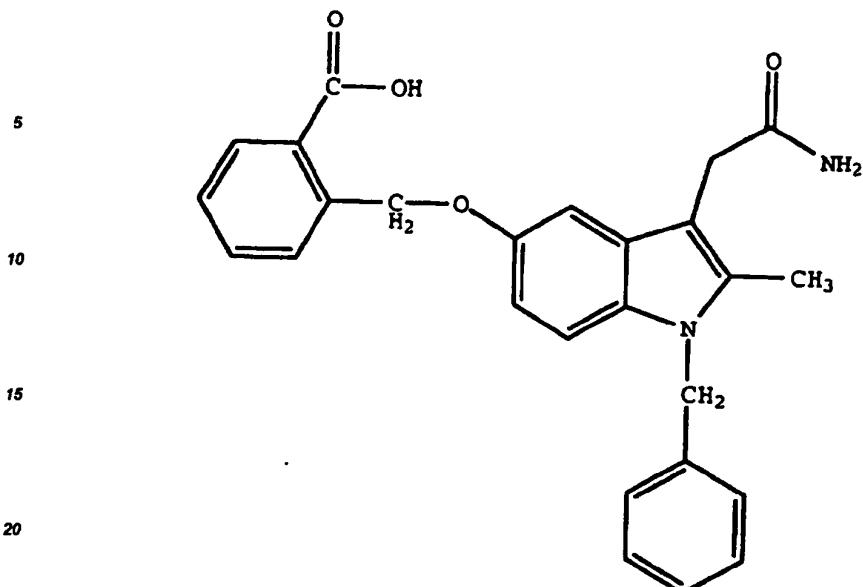
55



25 4-Allyl-2-ethyl-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-acetamide, a compound represented by the formula:



50 2-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yloxy]methyl]benzoic acid, a compound represented by the formula:



25 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts of each of the above named compounds.

The salts of the above 1H-indole-3-acetamide compounds of formulae A, I, II, III, IV, V, VI and the above named specific compounds are an additional aspect of the invention. In those instances where the compounds of the invention possess acidic or basic functional groups various salts may be formed which are more water soluble and physiologically suitable than the parent compound. Representative pharmaceutically acceptable salts, include but are not limited to, the alkali and alkaline earth salts such as lithium, sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, aluminum and the like. Salts are conveniently prepared from the free acid by treating the acid in solution with a base or by exposing the acid to an ion exchange resin.

Included within the definition of pharmaceutically acceptable salts are the relatively non-toxic, inorganic and organic base addition salts of compounds of the present invention, for example, ammonium, quaternary ammonium, and amine cations, derived from nitrogenous bases (e.g., derived from glucosamine, morpholine, choline, or diethylamine) of sufficient basicity to form salts with the compounds of this invention (see, for example, S. M. Berge, et al., "Pharmaceutical Salts," *J. Pharm. Sci.*, 66: 1-19 (1977)). Moreover, the basic group(s) of the compound of the invention may be reacted with suitable organic or inorganic acids to form salts such as acetate, benzenesulfonate, benzoate, bicarbonate, bisulfate, bitartrate, borate, bromide, camsylate, carbonate, chloride, clavulanate, citrate, chloride, edetate, edisylate, estolate, esylate, fluoride, fumarate, gluceptate, gluconate, glutamate, glycolylarsanilate, hexylresorcinate, bromide, chloride, hydroxynaphthoate, iodide, isothionate, lactate, lactobionate, laurate, malate, maiseate, mandelate, mesylate, methylbromide, methylnitrate, methylsulfate, mucate, napsylate, nitrate, oleate, oxalate, palmitate, pantothenate, phosphate, polygalactonate, salicylate, stearate, subacetate, succinate, tannate, tartrate, tosylate, trifluoroacetate, trifluoromethane sulfonate, and valerate.

Certain compounds of the invention may possess one or more chiral centers and may thus exist in optically active forms. Likewise, when the compounds contain an alkenyl or alkenylene group there exists the possibility of cis- and trans- isomeric forms of the compounds. The R- and S- isomers and mixtures thereof, including racemic mixtures as well as mixtures of cis- and trans- isomers, are contemplated by this invention. Additional asymmetric carbon atoms can be present in a substituent group such as an alkyl group. All such isomers as well as the mixtures thereof are intended to be included in the invention. If a particular stereoisomer is desired, it can be prepared by methods well known in the art by using stereospecific reactions with starting materials which contain the asymmetric centers and are already resolved or, alternatively by methods which lead to mixtures of the stereoisomers and subsequent resolution by known methods.

55 Prodrugs are derivatives of the compounds of the invention which have chemically or metabolically cleavable groups and become by solvolysis or under physiological conditions the compounds of the invention which are pharmaceutically active in vivo. Derivatives of the compounds of this invention have activity in both their acid and base derivative forms, but the acid derivative form often offers advantages of solubility, tissue com-

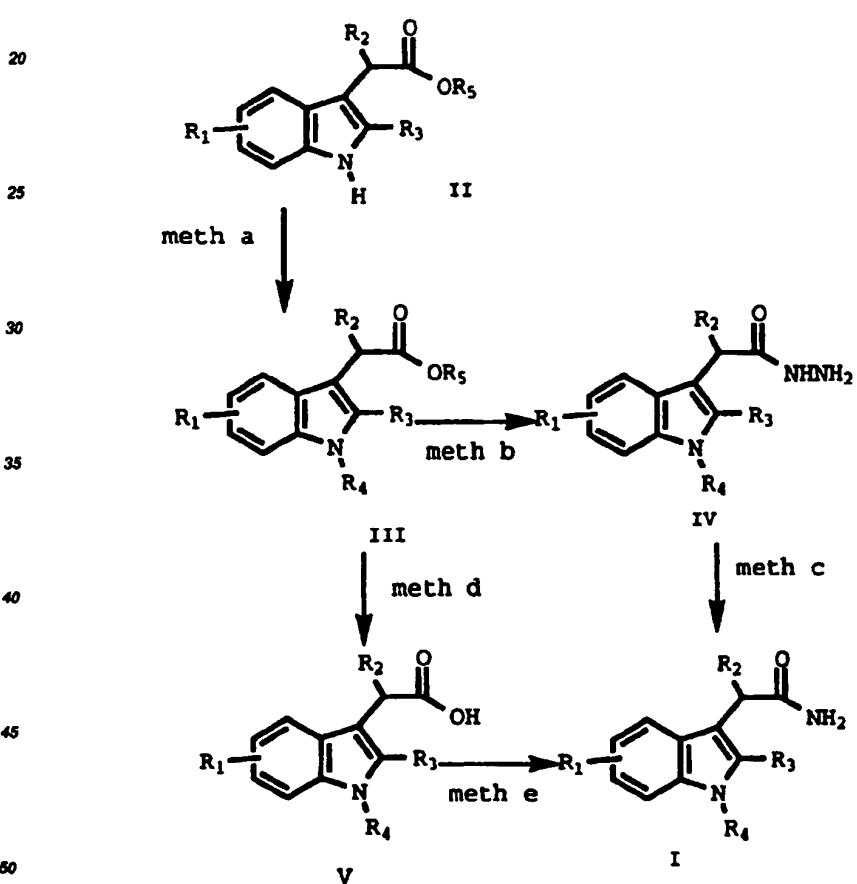
patibility, or delayed release in a mammalian organism (see, Bundgard, H., *Design of Prodrugs*, pp. 7-9, 21-24, Elsevier, Amsterdam 1985). Prodrugs include acid derivatives well known to practitioners of the art, such as, for example, esters prepared by reaction of the parent acidic compound with a suitable alcohol, or amides prepared by reaction of the parent acid compound with a suitable amine. Simple aliphatic or aromatic esters derived from acidic groups pendent on the compounds of this invention are preferred prodrugs. In some cases it is desirable to prepare double ester type prodrugs such as (acyloxy) alkyl esters or ((alkoxycarbonyl)oxy)alkyl esters.

Synthesis Methods

The synthesis of the 1H-indole-3-acetamides of structure (I) can be accomplished by known methods. Procedures useful for the syntheses of the compounds of this invention are outlined in the following reaction schemes:

In the first scheme, the 1H-indole-3-acetic acid esters, II, can be readily

15 **Scheme 1.**

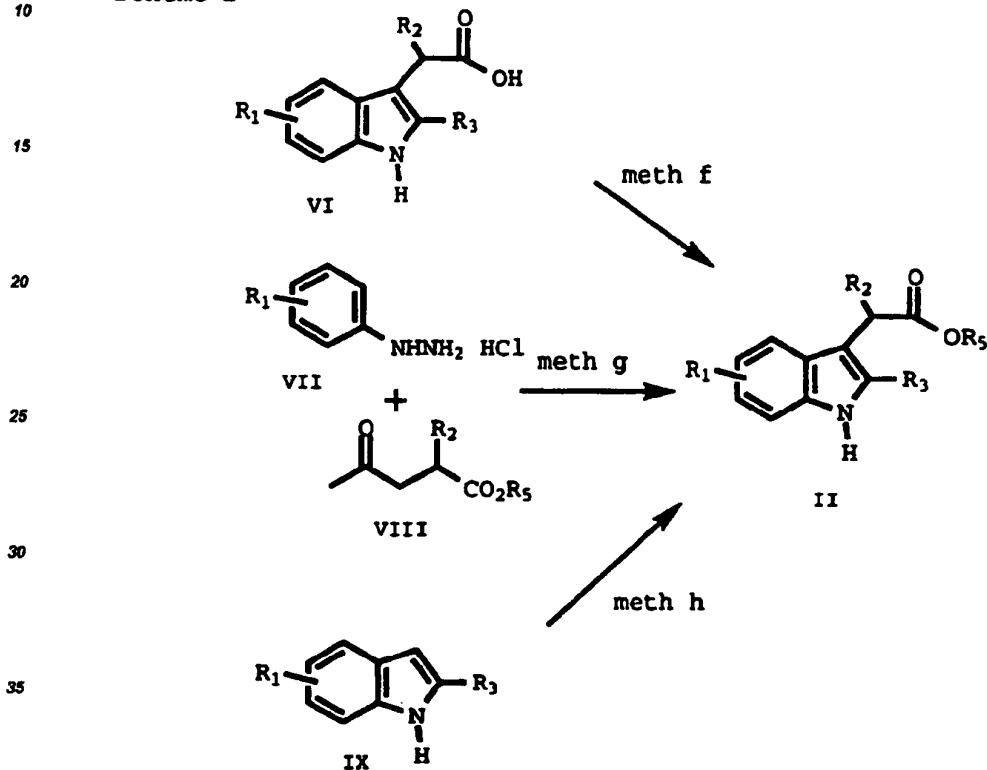


alkylated by an alkyl halide or arylalkyl halide in a solvent such as N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF) in the presence of a base (method a) to give intermediate 1-alkyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid esters, III. Bases such as potassium t-butoxide and sodium hydride are useful. It is advantageous to react the indole, II, with the base to first form the salt of II and then add alkylating agent. Treatment of the 1-alkyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid esters, III, with hydrazine or hydrazine hydrate in ethanol (method b) gives the desired 1-alkyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide hydrazides, IV. This condensation to form IV may be carried out at the reflux temperature of the solvent for a

period of 1 to 24 hours. The acetic acid hydrazides, IV, are hydrogenated to give the acetamides, I, by heating with Raney nickel in ethanol (method c). The intermediate acetic acid esters, III, can be first hydrolyzed to the acetic acid derivatives, V (method d), which on treatment with an alkyl chloroformate followed by anhydrous ammonia, also give amides, I (method e).

5 The intermediate 1H-indole-3-acetic acid esters, II, can be obtained from several synthetic routes as illustrated in Scheme 2. The 1H-indole-3-acetic acids, VI, are readily esterified in an alcohol such as methanol in the

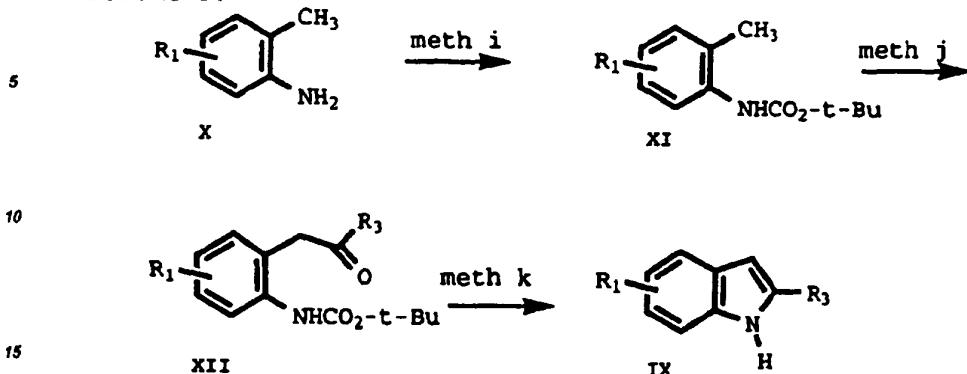
Scheme 2



40 presence of a strong acid, such as sulfuric acid (method f) to give II. Substituted phenylhydrazines, VII, can be reacted with levulinic acid derivatives, VIII, by the well known Fisher-indole synthesis (method g) to give (see, ref. B. Carlin and E. E. Fisher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1948, **70**, 3421) directly the indole, II. Ethanol as solvent at reflux temperature and hydrogen chloride as the acid catalyst is generally used. Indoles that are unsubstituted at the 3-position, IX, can be alkylated by first forming the zinc salts of IX and treating these salts with alkyl 2-bromoalkanoate (see, ref. Yoshihiko Ito, Hideaki Sato, Masahiro Murakami, *J. Org. Chem.*, 1991, **56**, 4864-4867) in (method h) to give II. The zinc salts of IX can be prepared by reacting the indoles IX first with n-butyllithium using tetrahydrofuran as solvent and then with zinc chloride in ether. The solvent for this reaction is usually changed after the zinc salt formation to toluene by removing the ether and THF solvent at reduced pressure and adding toluene.

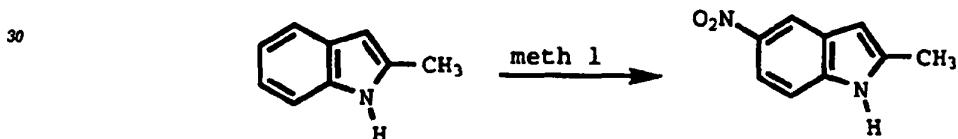
45 50 For additional substituted derivatives of IX, the reactions in Scheme 3 are (see, ref. Robin D. Clark, Joseph M. Muchowski, Lawrence E. Fisher, Lee A. Flippin, David B. Repke, Michel Souchet, *Synthesis*, 1991, 871-878) employed.

Scheme 3.



Ortho-methylanilines, X, are treated with di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate in THF at reflux temperature (method i) to give the N-*tert*-butoxycarbonylanilines, XI. The dianion of XI is formed in THF by treatment with two equivalents of *sec*-butyl lithium and reacts with one equivalent of an N-methoxy-N-methylalkanoic acid amide to give (method J) the aryl ketone, XII. These ketones on treatment with trifluoroacetic acid (method k) are both cyclized and deprotected on the nitrogen to give the indoles, IX. Indoles of type IX that are substituted at the 5-position with nitro, are (see, ref. Wayland E. Noland, Lowell R. Smith, and Donald C. Johnson, *J. Org. Chem.*, 1963, **28**, 2262-2266) obtained by adding sodium nitrate to the appropriate indole previously dissolved in sulfuric acid (method l).

Scheme 4.



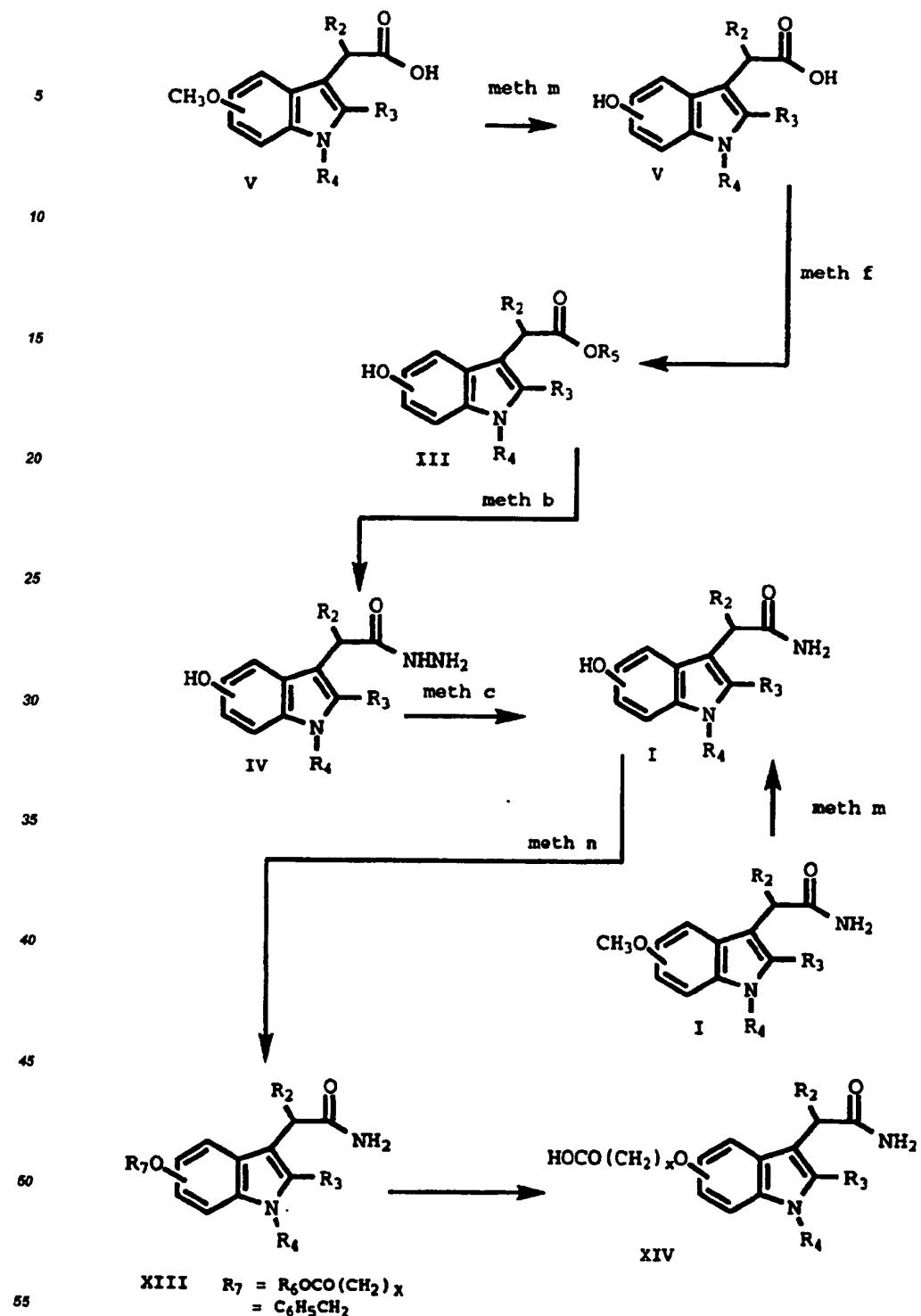
To obtain derivatives of I where the R₁ substituent is 5-hydroxy or an alkoxy other than methoxy, the methods described in scheme 5 are used. The 5-methoxy indole-3-acetic acids are readily demethylated (method m) by treatment with BBr_3 (see, ref. Tsung-Ying Shen and Charles A. Winter, *Adv. Drug Res.*, **1977**, *12*, 176) to give the 5-hydroxy indole, V, which is elaborated, by methods previously

Scheme 5

45

50

58

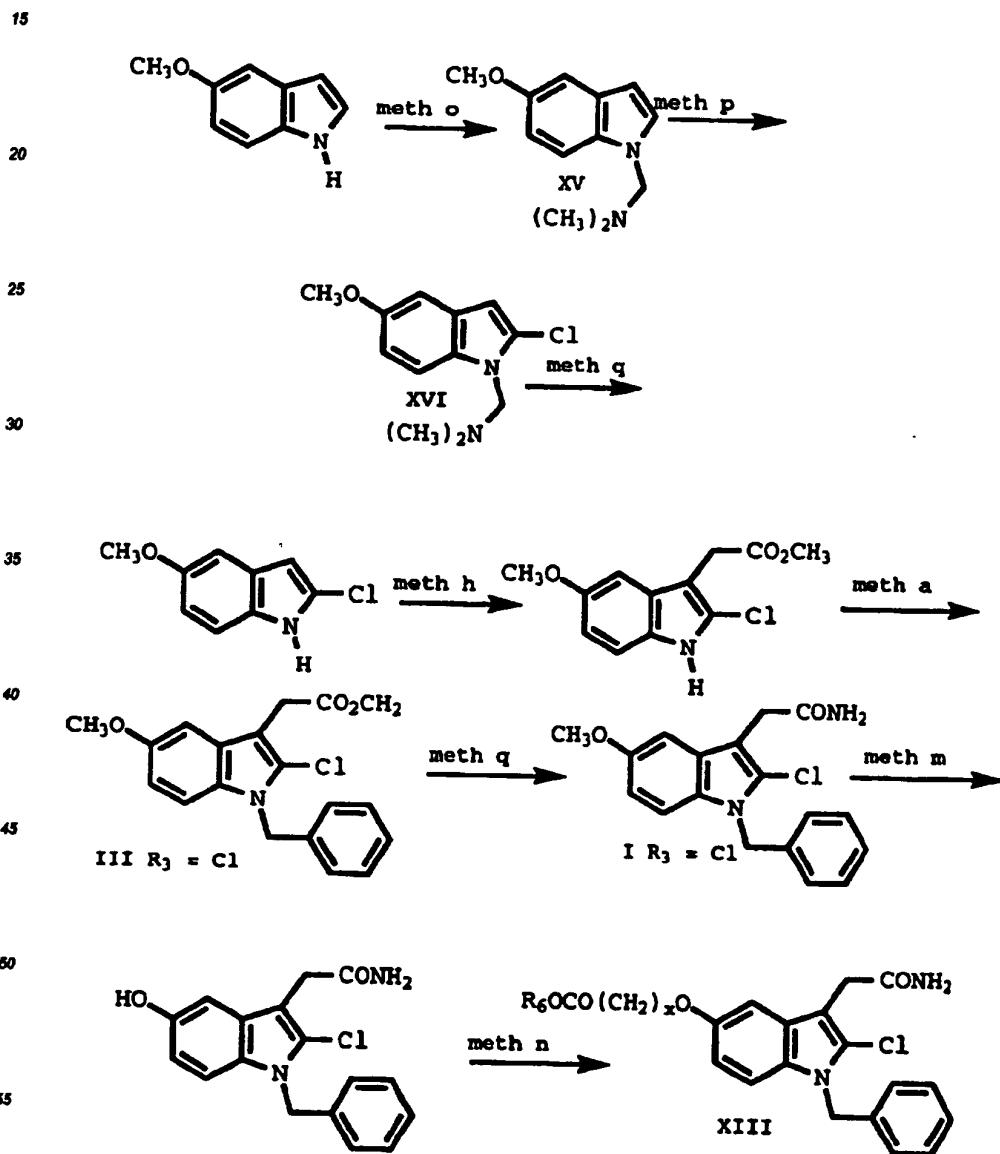


described, to I, where R_1 is hydroxy. 1H-Indole-3-acetamid s, where R_1 is 4- or 5- or 6-methoxy can be also

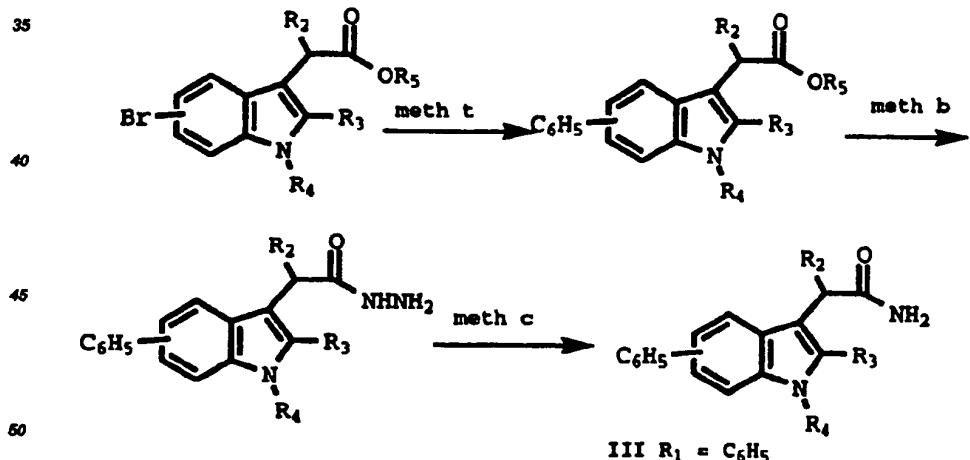
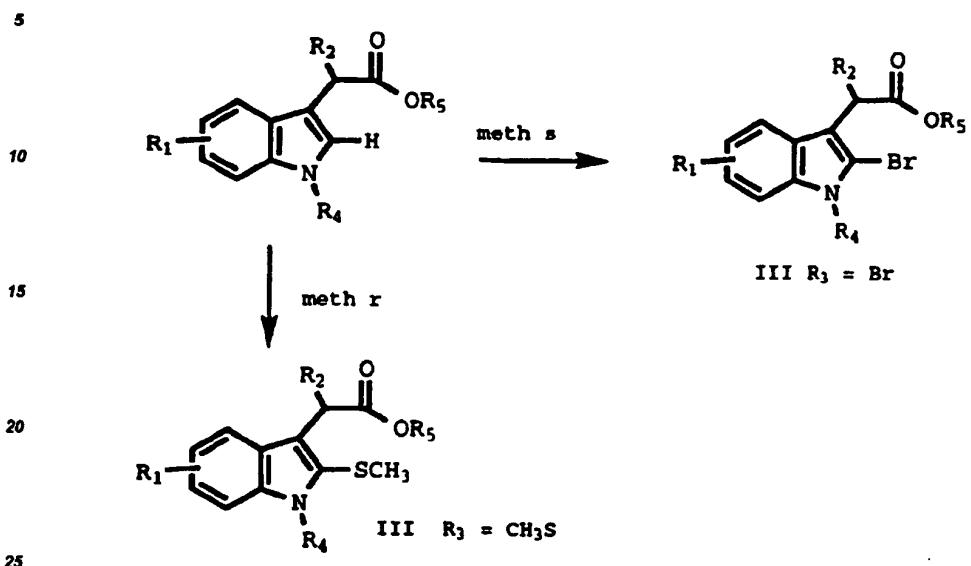
directly demethylated to I (R_1 = hydroxy) by method m. These compounds can then be alkylated to give compounds of structure XIII. When alkyl acrylates are used, derivatives of XIII are obtained where x is equal to 2. Bromo acetates and 4-bromo-butyrates give esters of structure XIII where x is 1 and 3, respectively. Use of benzyl halide gives the phenylmethyl derivative. All of the compounds where R_7 contains an ester group can be converted to their carboxylic acid equivalents, XIV.

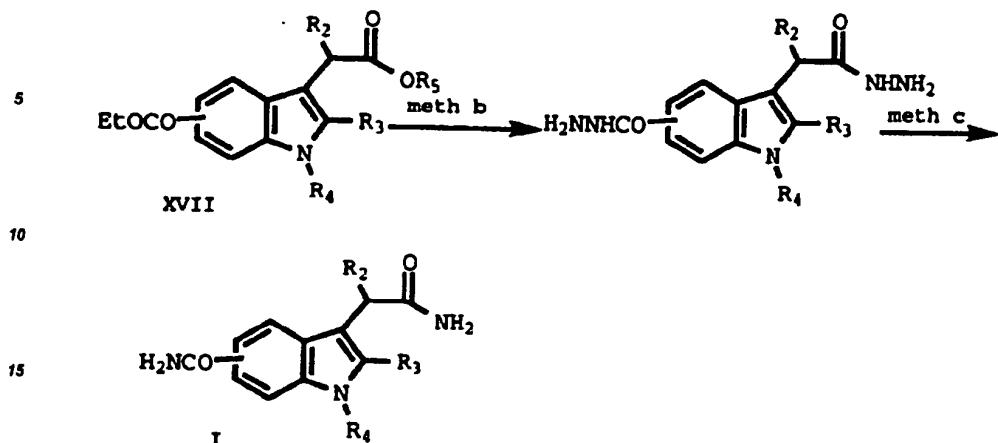
The 2-chloro-1H-indole-3-acetamides are best prepared by the reactions outlined in Scheme 6. The 1-dimethylamino substituent on XV is used to direct the lithiation by sec-butyl lithium to the 2 position. This on treatment with benzenesulfonyl chloride gives XVI, which on treatment with aqueous HCl, loses the dimethylamino group to give 2-chloro-5-methoxy-1H-indole. Reactions of this indole using methods previously described gives the 2-chloro esters, III. This ester may be converted to the 2-chloro amide, I, using the reagent, $(CH_3)_2AlNH_2$ (method q). These may be O-demethylated and the phenolic intermediate realkylated as described in Scheme 5 to give the compounds of structure XIII, where R_3 is chloro.

Scheme 6.



The intermediate 1H-indole-3-acetyl acid esters, III, where R_3 is bromo are made by reacting the ester, III, where R_3 is hydrogen, with N-bromosuccinimide (method s). In a similar fashion, methanesulfenyl chloride gives the 3-methylthio indole, III, $R_3 = CH_3S$.





20 The amides, I, where the R₁ substituents contain nitrogen, as well as the compounds where substitution on the amino group contains esters or carboxylic acids, such as XXI and XXII, may be made by the procedures outlined in Scheme 8. 2-Methyl-5-nitro-1H-Indole is first benzylated to give the N-substituted derivative, XVIII. Treatment of this indole with oxalyl chloride (method u) followed by the addition of gaseous ammonia gives the oxalamide, XIX. Stepwise reduction of this compound is carried out. The glycolic acid amide, XX, is obtained by treatment of XVIII with NaBH₄ (method v). Reduction of this intermediate with triethylsilane (method w) in trifluoroacetic acid results in the acetamide, I, (R₁ = O₂N). The nitro function may be reduced catalytically (method x) to give the 5-amino amide (I, R₁ = NH₂). Treatment of this amino intermediate with methyl acrylate gives the ester amide XXI (some of the N,N-disubstituted derivative is also obtained in this reaction). This ester may be hydrolyzed with sodium hydroxide to give carboxylic acid amide, XXII. The same ester intermediate, XXI, is reacted with hydrazine to give the hydrazinocarbonyl derivative, XXIII.

25 6-Methoxy-2-methyl-1H-Indole is converted to 6-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-actamides by the sequence of reactions outlined in the first 4 steps of Scheme 8.

30

35

40

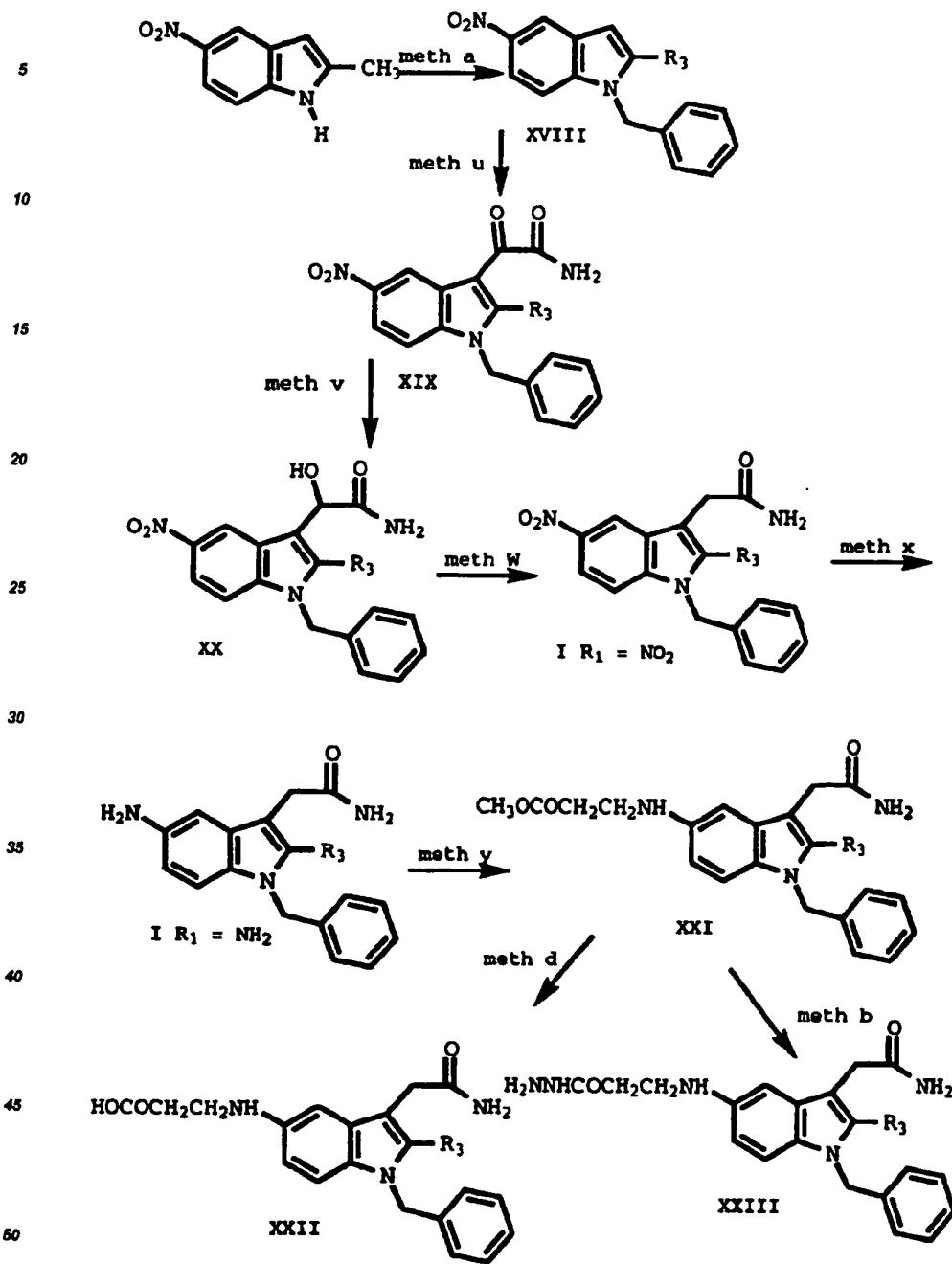
45

50

65

41

Scheme 8.



Described below are examples of the present invention which are provided only for illustrative purposes.

55 They are not intended to limit the scope of the present invention in any way as numerous embodiments within the scope of the claims will be apparent to those of ordinary skill in the art.

EXAMPLESExample 1

5 **Preparation of 2,6-Dimethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide**

A. **N-*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl-2, 5-dimethylaniline.** A solution of 2,5-dimethylaniline(24.2g, 0.2 mol) and 50.0g(0.229 mol) of di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate in 200 ml of tetrahydrofuran was heated slowly to reflux and reflux maintained for 2 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture was concentrated at reduced pressure and the residue dissolved in EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with 1N citric acid solution, dried over Na₂SO₄, and concentrated at reduced pressure. Crystallization of the residue from hexane gave 24.0g (54% yield) of N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-2,5-dimethylaniline melting at 103-104°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for C₁₃H₁₉NO₂: C, 70.56; H, 8.65; N, 6.32. Found: C, 70.28; H, 8.51; N, 6.80.

B. **2,6-Dimethyl-1H-indole.** A solution of 1.3M sec-butyl lithium/cyclohexane (81.0 ml, 0.105 mol) was added slowly to 11.05g (0.05 mol) of N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-ethoxy-2-methylaniline in 150 ml of THF while keeping the temperature below -40°C with a dry ice-ethanol bath. After 0.25 hours, 7.21g (0.07 mol) of N-methoxy-N-methylacetamide in an equal volume of THF was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred for 1 hour, the cooling bath removed and stirred an additional one hour. It was then poured into a mixture of 500 ml of ether and 500 ml of 1N HCl. The organic layer was separated, washed with water and dried over Na₂SO₄. After removing the solvent there remained 12.5g of crude 1-(2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-4-methylphenyl)-2-propanone. This material and 15 g of trifluoroacetic acid in 250 ml of CH₂Cl₂ was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture was washed twice with water, a saturated Na₂CO₃ solution and dried over Na₂SO₄. After removing the solvent, the product was chromatographed on silica eluting with toluene to give 3.2g (44% yield) of 2,6-dimethyl-1H-indole melting at 74-76°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for C₁₀H₁₁N: C, 82.72; H, 7.64; N, 9.65. Found: C, 82.47; H, 7.34; N, 9.92.

C. **2,6-Dimethyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester.** To a cooled solution of 2.9g (0.02 mol) of 2,6-dimethyl-1H-indole in 40 ml of THF was added 12.5mL(0.02 mol) of a 1.6M solution of *n*-butyl lithium in hexane keeping the temperature below 10°C with an ice-ethanol bath. After 0.25 hours, 20.0 ml (0.0277 mol) of a 1M solution of ZnCl₂ in ether was added. The cooling bath was removed and the mixture stirred for 2 hours, then concentrated at reduced pressure to a wax which was dissolved in 40 ml of toluene. To this solution was added 1.89 ml (0.02 mol) of methyl 2-bromoacetate, the mixture was stirred 24 hours and poured into 100 ml of 1N HCl and 100 ml of EtOAc. The organic layer was washed twice with water, dried (Na₂SO₄), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica and eluted with 10% EtOAc/toluene to give 3.17g (73%) of 2,6-dimethyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester as an oil.

Analyses: Calc'd for C₁₃H₁₅NO₂: C, 71.87; H, 6.96; N, 6.45. Found: C, 71.61; H, 6.95; N, 6.30.

D. **2,6-Dimethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester.** Potassium *t*-butoxide (0.975g, 0.0087 mol) was added to 1.89g (0.0087 mol) of 2,6-dimethyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester in 25 ml of DMF, the mixture was stirred for 0.25 hours, 1.0 ml of benzyl chloride was added and the mixture stirred for 72 hours. After diluting with water, the mixture was extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed four times with water and dried over Na₂SO₄. The solvent was removed at reduced pressure and the residue chromatographed on silica eluting with toluene to give 1.76g (66% yield) of 2,6-dimethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester as an oil.

Analyses: Calc'd for C₂₀H₂₂NO₂: C, 78.15; H, 6.89; N, 4.58. Found: C, 78.18; H, 7.10; N, 4.53.

E. **2,6-Dimethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid.** A solution of 1.7g (0.0055mol) of 2,6-dimethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester and 2 ml of 5N NaOH in 50 ml of MeOH was heated to maintain reflux for 3h, diluted with water and made acidic with 5N HCl solution. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution dried over Na₂SO₄ and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from toluene to give 0.85g (58% yield) of 2,6-dimethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid, mp, 179-180°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for C₁₉H₁₉NO₂: C, 77.79; H, 6.53; N, 4.77. Found: C, 78.01; H, 6.60; N, 4.80.

F.2,6-Dimethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A solution of 0.48g (1.64 mmol) of 2,6-dimethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid in 25 ml of tetrahydrofuran (THF) was cooled with an ice-water bath, 0.45 ml of triethylamine was added followed by 0.13 ml (1.7 mmol) of methyl chloroformate. After 0.5 hour, gaseous NH₃ was bubbled into the reaction mixture for 0.5 hour, the cooling bath removed and the mixture stirred for 2 hours. It was then poured into water and extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with a Na₂CO₃ solution, dried(Na₂SO₄), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from MeOH/water, to give 0.19g (39%

yield) of 2,6-dimethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 160-163°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{19}H_{20}N_2O$: C, 78.05; H, 6.89; N, 9.58. Found: C, 78.31; H, 6.97; N, 9.31.

Example 2

5

Preparation of 5-Hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide

10

A. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester. A solution of 12.2g (0.0557 mol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid in 150 mL of MeOH and 1 mL of sulfuric acid was heated to maintain reflux for 15 hours. After cooling, the mixture was diluted with a sodium bicarbonate solution and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with a saturated NaCl solution and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed at reduced pressure to give 13g of crude 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester.

15

B. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid. The crude 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester from A (56 mmol) was dissolved in 250 mL of DMF and approximately 10 mL of THF and 2.5g (62 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil added. After 0.5 hour, 8 mL (67 mmol) of benzyl bromide was added and the mixture stirred for 0.75 hours, diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc. The product was chromatographed on silica (20% ether/hexane \rightarrow 50% ether/hexane) to give 10.1g of a mixture of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl and ethyl esters. This mixture was dissolved in 200 mL of EtOH and 20 mL of 5N NaOH and heated to maintain reflux for 20.75 hours. After cooling the mixture was made acidic with 5N HCl and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with NaCl, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated at reduced pressure to give 7.9g (46% yield) of crude 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid.

20

C. 5-Hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester. Three mL (30 mmol) of BBr_3 was added to 3.1g (10 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid in 250 mL of CH_2Cl_2 and the mixture stirred for 17 hours. After stirring with 1N HCl, some EtOH was added, the organic layer separated, washed with a saturated NaCl solution, dried and concentrated at reduced pressure to give 2.95g (100% yield) of crude 5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid. A methanol solution of 1.7g of the material was treated with sulfuric acid as described in Part A to give after silica gel chromatography (30% ether/hexane \rightarrow 60% ether/hexane) 1.5g of 5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester.

25

D. 5-Hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide. A solution of 750 mg (2.4 mmol) of 5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester and 2 mL of hydrazine in 75 mL of ethanol was heated to maintain reflux for 72 hours. After cooling, 2g of Raney nickel was added cautiously and the mixture heated at reflux for 4 hours. After cooling, the solvent was decanted off and the solids washed with EtOAc by decanting. The combined solvents were filtered through celite and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from EtOH to give 570mg (80% yield) of 5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 185-187°C.

30

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{18}H_{18}N_2O_2$: C, 73.45; H, 6.16; N, 9.52. Found: C, 73.23; H, 6.32; N, 9.69.

Example 3

Preparation of 5-Methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide

40

A. 5-Methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester. As described in Example 1, Part C, 29.44g (0.02 mol) of 5-methoxy-1H-indole was treated with 125 mL (0.2 mol) of 1.6M n-butylium in hexane, 200 mL (0.2 mol) of 1M $ZnCl_2$ in ether, and 22.2 mL (0.2 mol) of ethyl 2-bromoacetate to give after chromatography on silica (eluted with 5% EtOAc/toluene) 20g (43% yield) of 5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester, as an oil.

45

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{13}H_{18}NO_3$: C, 66.94; H, 6.48; N, 6.01. Found: C, 66.72; H, 6.53; N, 5.91.

50

B. 5-Methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester. Using the procedure described in Example 1 Part D, 3.15g (0.0135 mol) of 5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester was reacted with 1.51g (0.0135 mol) of potassium t-butoxide and 1.55mL (0.0135 mol) of benzyl chloride to give after silica chromatography (gradient, toluene \rightarrow 5% EtOAc/toluene) 3.6g (83%) of 5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester as an oil.

55

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{20}H_{22}NO_3$: C, 74.28; H, 6.55; N, 4.33. Found: C, 75.53; H, 6.67; N, 4.08.

C. 5-Methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide. A solution of 1.4g (4.33 mmol) of 5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester and 10 mL of hydrazine in 75 mL of EtOH was heated to maintain reflux for 16 hours. On cooling of the reaction mixture a precipitate formed that was filtered to give 1.33g (93% yield) of 5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide, mp

143-144°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{18}H_{19}N_3O_2$: C, 69.88; H, 6.19; N, 13.58. Found: C, 69.91 H, 6.19; N, 13.37.

5 D. 5-Methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide. One gram of Raney nickel was added to 790mg (2.4 mmol) of 5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide in 120 mL of EtOH and the mixture heated at reflux for 2 hours. After filtering off the catalyst, the filtrate was concentrated at reduced pressure and the residue triturated with ether to give 675mg (89% yield) of 5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 156-158°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{18}H_{18}N_2O_2$: C, 73.45; H, 6.16; N, 9.52. Found: C, 70.18; H, 5.96; N, 8.93.10 Example 4

Preparation of 1-Cyclohexylmethyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide

15 A. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester. Dry hydrogen chloride was bubbled into a solution of 27.95g (0.16 mol) of 4-methoxyphenylhydrazine hydrochloride and 19.72g (0.17 mol) of levulinic acid in 500 mL of ethanol for 0.5 hours while cooling with an ice-water bath. The bath was removed and the reaction was slowly heated to reflux and reflux maintained for 20 hours. After cooling the mixture was poured into water and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with a sodium bicarbonate solution and dried over Na_2SO_4 . After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the residue was chromatographed over silica eluting with 5% EtOAc/toluene to give 14.2g (36% yield) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester, mp, 38-40°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{14}H_{17}NO_3$: C, 67.99; H, 6.93; N, 5.66. Found: C, 68.24 H, 6.88; N, 5.75.

20 B. 1-Cyclohexylmethyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester. Using the procedure described in Example 1 Part D, 4.7g(0.019 mol) of 5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester was reacted with 2.13g (0.019 mol) of potassium t-butoxide and 2.65 mL(0.019 mol) of cyclohexylmethyl bromide to give after silica chromatography (gradient, toluene \rightarrow 5% EtOAc/toluene) 3.16g(48%) of 1-cyclohexylmethyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester as an oil.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{21}H_{29}NO_3$: C, 73.44; H, 8.51; N, 4.08. Found: C, 73.68; H, 8.64; N, 4.14.

25 C. 1-Cyclohexylmethyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid. Using the method described in Example 1, Part E, 3.1g (9.0 mmol) of 1-cyclohexylmethyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester and 5 mL of 5N NaOH were reacted in 50 mL of EtOH to give on workup, 2.1g (74% yield) of 1-cyclohexylmethyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid melting at 173-175°C after crystallization from toluene.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{19}H_{26}NO_3$: C, 72.35; H, 7.99; N, 4.44. Found: C, 72.64; H, 8.00; N, 4.52.

30 D. 1-Cyclohexylmethyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide. A solution of 0.83g (2.0 mmol) 1-cyclohexylmethyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid and 0.56 mL (4 mmol) of triethylamine in 25 mL of tetrahydrofuran (THF) was reacted with 0.162 mL (2.1 mmol) of methyl chloroformate and then treated with gaseous NH_3 as described in Example 1, Part F, to give 0.3g (48% yield) of 1-cyclohexylmethyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 125-126°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{19}H_{26}N_2O_2$: C, 72.58; H, 8.33; N, 8.91. Found: C, 72.57; H, 8.35; N, 8.81.

40

Example 5

Preparation of 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide

45 A. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester. Using the procedure described in Example 1, Part D, 4.07g (0.0165 mol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester (Example 4, Part A) was reacted with 1.85g (0.0165 mol) of potassium t-butoxide and 1.96 mL (0.0165 mol) of benzyl chloride to give after silica chromatography (gradient, toluene \rightarrow 10% EtOAc/toluene) 3.78g (68% yield) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester, mp, 63-64°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{21}H_{23}NO_3$: C, 74.75; H, 6.87; N, 4.15. Found: C, 74.76; H, 6.89; N, 4.28.

50 B. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide. A solution of 1.0g (2.96 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester and 5 mL of hydrazine in 50 mL of MeOH was reacted as described in Example 3, Part C, to give by trituration with ether 920 mg (96% yield) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide, mp, 161-162°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{19}H_{22}N_2O_2$: C, 70.53; H, 6.54; N, 12.99. Found: C, 70.41; H, 6.58; N, 12.93.

55 C. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide. Using the method as in Example 3, Part D, 945mg (2.9 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide was reacted in 50 mL of EtOH using 1.5g of Raney nickel. Workup of this reaction mixture gave a crude product that was filtered through silica using EtOAc and crystallized from $CH_2Cl_2/MeOH$ to give 225mg (25% yield)

of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 128-130°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{19}H_{20}N_2O_2$: C, 74.00; H, 6.54; N, 9.08. Found: C, 74.00; H, 6.51; N, 9.05.

Example 6

5

Preparation of 1(2,6-Dichlorophenylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide

A. 1-(2,6-Dichlorophenylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester. A suspension of 80 mg (2 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil was washed with hexane and placed in 8 mL of DMF. With ice-bath cooling, 494 mg (2 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester was added and stirred 1 hour, then 391mg (2 mmol) of alpha,2,6-trichlorotoluene was added and stirring maintained for 1.5 hours. The mixture was diluted with water, extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with water/NaCl, and dried ($MgSO_4$). The solution was concentrated at reduced pressure, and the product chromatographed on silica, eluting with 25% EtOAc/hexane to give 556mg (68% yield) of 1-(2,6-dichlorophenylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester, which solidified on standing, melting point, 131-133°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{21}H_{21}Cl_2NO_3$: C, 62.08; H, 5.21; N, 3.45. Found: C, 61.79; H, 5.23; N, 3.51. B. 1-(2,6-Dichlorophenylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide. Hydrazine (1.3 mL) was added to 533mg (1.3 mmol) of 1-(2,6-dichlorophenylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester in 10 mL of EtOH and the mixture heated to maintain reflux for 6 hours. After cooling the mixture was diluted with water, extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with a sodium chloride solution and dried over $MgSO_4$. The solvent was removed at reduced pressure and the residue crystallized from MeOH to give 250mg (61% yield) of 1-(2,6-dichlorophenylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide, mp 194-196°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{19}H_{19}Cl_2N_3O_2$: C, 58.17; H, 4.88; N, 10.71. Found: C, 58.65; H, 4.98; N, 10.68. C. 1-(2,6-Dichlorophenylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide. Raney nickel was added to 168mg (0.43 mmol) of 1-(2,6-dichlorophenylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide in 10 mL of EtOH and the mixture heated at reflux temperature for 3.5 hours. After cooling, the solvent was decanted from the solids, the solids washed several times with EtOAc and the combined solvents concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was filtered through silica eluting with EtOAc and then crystallized from MeOH to give 24mg(15% yield) of 1-(2,6-dichlorophenylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 203-205°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{19}H_{18}Cl_2N_2O_2$: C, 60.49; H, 4.81; N, 7.42. Found: C, 60.75; H, 4.89; N, 7.65.

Example 7

35

Preparation of 1-[(4-Benzylxyphenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide

A. 1-[(4-Benzylxyphenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid. Using the method described in Example 6, Part A, 2.0g (8.12 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester, 0.325g (8.12 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil, and 1.88g (8.12 mmol) of 4-benzylxy-1-chloromethylbenzene were reacted to give on workup 800mg of crude 1-[(4-benzylxyphenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester. The crude ester in 50 mL of MeOH and 15 mL of 1N NaOH was heated at reflux temperature for 3 hours and left standing for 18 hours. After diluting with water, the mixture was made acidic with 1N HCl and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was dried(Na_2SO_4) and concentrated. The residue was crystallized from MeOH to give 280mg(32% yield) of 1-[(4-benzylxyphenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid, mp, 175-179°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{26}H_{25}NO_4$: C, 75.16; H, 6.06 N, 3.37. Found: C, 75.05; H, 6.07; N, 3.47. B. 1-[(4-Benzylxyphenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide. Using the method in Example 1, F, 170mg(0.41 mmol) of 1-[(4-benzylxyphenyl)-methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid, 0.1 mL of ethyl chloroformate, 1 mL of triethylamine and excess NH₃ were reacted to give 60mg (35% yield) of 1-[(4-benzylxyphenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide, after crystallizing from MeOH, melting at 155-157°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{26}H_{26}N_2O_3$: C, 75.34; H, 6.32; N, 6.76. Found: C, 75.09; H, 6.35; N, 6.64.

Example 8

55

Preparation of 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-[(2-pyridyl)methyl]-1H-indole-3-acetamide

A. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-[(2-pyridyl)methyl]-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester. Using the procedure described in Example 6, Part A, 494mg (2 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester

was reacted with 160 mg (4 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and 328mg (2 mmol) of 2-picolyli chloride hydrochloride and after chromatography on silica (eluting with 50% EtOAc/hexane) there was obtained 510mg (75%) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-[(2-pyridyl)methyl]-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester as an oil.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{20}H_{22}N_2O_3$; C, 70.99; H, 6.55; N, 8.28. Found: C, 71.28; H, 6.84; N, 8.44.

5 B. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-[(2-pyridyl)methyl]-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide. Using the method described in Example 6, Part B, 480mg (1.4 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-[(2-pyridyl)methyl]-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester was reacted with 1.4 mL of hydrazine to give on crystallization from MeOH 304mg(67% yield) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-[(2-pyridyl)methyl]-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide, mp, 147-148°C.

10 Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{18}H_{20}N_4O_2$; C, 66.65; H, 6.22; N, 17.27. Found: C, 66.40; H, 6.21; N, 17.34.

C. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-[(2-pyridyl)methyl]-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

15 Using the procedure in Example 6, Part C, 200mg (0.62 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-[(2-pyridyl)methyl]-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide and approximately 1 gram of Raney nickel in 10 mL of EtOH were reacted to give after chromatographing twice on silica eluting with EtOAc followed by 5% MeOH/EtOAc, 54mg (28% yield) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-[(2-pyridyl)methyl]-1H-indole-3-acetamide, as a semi-solid material.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{18}H_{19}N_3O_2$; C, 69.88; H, 6.19; N, 13.58. Found: C, 70.04; H, 6.32; N, 13.85.

Example 9

Preparation of 2-Ethyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide

A. N-*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl-4-methoxy-2-methylaniline. By the procedure in Example 1, Part A, 13.7 g(0.1 mole) of 4-methoxy-2-methylaniline was reacted with 25g (0.1145 mol) of di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate to give 17.25 g (73% yield) of N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-methoxy-2-methylaniline melting at 80-82°C, after crystallizing from hexane.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{13}H_{19}NO_3$; C, 65.80; H, 8.07; N, 5.90. Found: C, 65.86; H, 8.15; N, 5.81.

B. 1-[2-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino)-5-methoxyphenyl]-2-butanone. A solution of 1.3M sec-butyl lithium/cyclohexane(81 mL, 0.105 mol) was added slowly to 11.85g (0.05 mol) of N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-methoxy-2-methylaniline in 80 mL of THF while keeping the temperature below -40°C with a dry ice-ethanol bath. The bath was removed and the temperature allowed to rise to -20°C and then the bath was replaced. After the temperature had cooled to -60°C, 6.1g (0.052 mol) of N-methoxy-N-methylpropanamide in an equal volume of THF was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred 1 hour, the cooling bath removed and stirred an additional 1 hour. It was then poured into a mixture of 200 mL of ether and 200 mL of 1N HCl. The organic layer was separated, washed with water, dried over Na_2SO_4 , and concentrated at reduced pressure to give 10.9g (74% yield) of 1-(2-(*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino)-5-methoxyphenyl)-2-butanone, melting at 80-81°C, after chromatography on silica eluting with 5% EtOAc/toluene.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{15}H_{23}NO_4$; C, 65.51; H, 7.90; N, 4.77. Found: C, 65.69; H, 7.89; N, 4.90.

C. 2-Ethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole. 1-[2-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino)-5-methoxyphenyl]-2-butanone (7.33 g, 0.025 mol) in 120 mL of CH_2Cl_2 and 20 mL of trifluoroacetic acid was stirred for 20h, washed with water, $NaHCO_3$ solution and the product chromatographed on silica (eluted with 20% EtOAc/hexane) to give 2.54g (58% yield) of 2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole as a white solid, mp 49-50°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{11}H_{13}NO$; C, 75.40; H, 7.48; N, 7.99. Found: C, 75.64 H, 7.61; N, 8.04.

D. 2-Ethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester. As in Example 1, Part C, 3.5g (0.02mole) of 5-methoxy-2-ethyl-1H-indole was treated with 12.5 mL (0.02 mol) of a 1.6M solution of *n*-butyl lithium in hexane, 20 mL (0.02 mol) of a 1M solution of $ZnCl_2$ in ether, and 1.89mL(0.02 mol) of methyl 2-bromoacetate to give after chromatography on silica (toluene → 10% EtOAc/toluene) 3.32g(59%) of 2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester as an oil.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{14}H_{17}NO_3$; C, 67.99; H, 6.93; N, 5.66. Found: C, 67.73; H, 6.94; N, 5.39.

E. 2-Ethyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester. A solution of 2.47g (0.01 mol) of 2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester in 25 mL of DMF was treated with 1.12g (0.01 mol) of potassium *t*-butoxide, stirred 0.5h, and 1.15 mL (0.01 mol) of benzyl chloride added. After 72 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with water, extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution was washed four times with water and dried over Na_2SO_4 . After concentrating at reduced pressure, the product was purified by chromatography on silica, eluting with a gradient, toluene→10% EtOAc/toluene, to give 1.5g (44% yield) of 2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester as oil.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{21}H_{23}NO_3$; C, 74.75; H, 6.87; N, 4.15. Found: C, 75.00; H, 6.99; N, 4.28.

F. 2-Ethyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide.

Using the method described in Example 3, Part C, 748 mg (2.2 mmol) of 2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1-

(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester was reacted with 2.2 mL of hydrazine to give 552mg (74% yield) of 2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide, that crystallized out of the reaction mixture on cooling (melting point, 138-140°C).

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{20}H_{23}N_3O_2$; C, 71.19; H, 6.87; N, 12.45. Found: C, 71.13 H, 6.86; N, 12.33.

5 G. 2-Ethyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide. An ethanol solution of 225mg (0.67 mmol) of 2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide was reacted with approximately 1.5g of Raney nickel as described in Example 6, Part C, and the crude product chromatographed on silica eluting with 50% EtOAc/hexane, EtOAc, and then 5% MeOH/EtOAc to give after crystallizing from MeOH, 46mg (21% yield) of 2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 161-166°C.

10 Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{20}H_{22}N_2O_2$; C, 74.51; H, 6.88; N, 8.69. Found: C, 74.77 H, 6.94; N, 8.81.

Example 10

Preparation of 5-Methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-2-propyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide

15 A. 1-[2-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino)-5-methoxyphenyl]-2-pentanone. Using the method described in Example 9, Part B, 15.17 g (0.064 mol) of N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-methoxy-2-methylaniline (Example 9, Part A) was treated with 1.3M sec-butyl lithium/cyclohexane (100 mL, 0.13 mol) and 8.4g (0.064mol) of N-methoxy-N-methylbutanamide to give 14.31g (73% yield) of 1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-5-methoxyphenyl)-2-pentanone, melting at 77-78°C, after chromatography on silica eluting with 5% EtOAc/toluene.

20 Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{17}H_{25}NO_4$; C, 66.43; H, 8.20; N, 4.56. Found: C, 66.42; H, 8.09; N, 4.71.

B. 5-methoxy-2-propyl-1H-indole. 1-[2-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino)-5-methoxyphenyl]-2-pentanone (14.27 g, 0.0465 mol) was treated with 20 mL of trifluoroacetic acid as described in Example 9, Part C and the product crystallized from hexane to give 5.5g (58% yield) of 5-methoxy-2-propyl-1H-indole as a white solid, mp 49-50°C.

25 Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{12}H_{15}NO$; C, 76.18; H, 7.99; N, 7.40. Found: C, 76.36 H, 8.07; N, 7.52.

C. 5-Methoxy-2-propyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester. As in Example 1, Part C, 5.125g (0.0271 mole) of 5-methoxy-2-propyl-1H-indole was treated with 16.9 mL (0.0271 mol) of a 1.6M solution of *n*-butyl lithium in hexane, 27.1 mL (0.0271 mol) of a 1M solution of $ZnCl_2$ in ether, and 2.7mL (0.0271 mol) of methyl 2-bromoacetate to give after chromatography on silica (20% EtOAc/ hexane) 4.65g (86%) of 5-methoxy-2-propyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester as an oil.

30 Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{15}H_{19}NO_3$; C, 68.94; H, 7.33; N, 5.38. Found: C, 68.69; H, 7.38; N, 5.63.

D. 5-Methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-2-propyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester. Using the procedure described in Example 1 Part D, 522 mg (2 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-propyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester was reacted with 80mg (2 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and 0.24 mL (2 mmol) of benzyl bromide to give after silica chromatography(25% EtOAc/hexane) 501mg (71%) of 5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-2-propyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester as an oil.

E. 5-Methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-2-propyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide. Using the method described in Example 3, Part C, 480 mg (1.37 mmol) of 5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-2-propyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester was reacted with 1.4 mL of hydrazine to give after crystallizing from MeOH 56mg (74% yield) of 5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-2-propyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide, mp 140-141°C.

40 Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{21}H_{25}N_3O_2$; C, 71.77; H, 7.17; N, 11.98. Found: C, 71.98 H, 7.12; N, 11.98.

F. 5-Methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-2-propyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide. An ethanol solution of 160mg (0.46 mmol) of 5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-2-propyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide was reacted with approximately 1.0g of Raney nickel as described in Example 6, Part C, and the crude product chromatographed on silica eluting with EtOAc to give after crystallizing from MeOH, 55mg (36% yield) of 5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-2-propyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 154-156°C.

45 Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{21}H_{24}N_2O_2$; C, 74.97; H, 7.19; N, 8.33. Found: C, 75.05; H, 7.21; N, 8.29.

Example 11

Preparation of 2-Chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide

A. 1-Dimethylaminomethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole.

50 A 37% aqueous solution of formaldehyde (11g, 0.176 mol) was added dropwise to 10g (0.068 mol) of 5-methoxy-1H-indole and 17mL (0.176 mol) of 40% aqueous dimethylamine in 100 mL of tetrahydrofuran and the mixture heated to maintain reflux for 3 hours. After cooling water was added and the mixture extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed twice with water, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica eluting with a gradient, $CH_2Cl_2 \rightarrow 2\% MeOH/CH_2Cl_2$, to give 6.26g (45% yield) of 1-dimethylaminomethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole as an oil.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{12}H_{16}N_2O$: C, 70.56; H, 7.89; N, 13.71. Found: C, 70.79; H, 7.82; N, 13.84.

5 B. 2-Chloro-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester. Cooling with a dry ice-ethanol bath, 20 mL (0.026 mol) of 1.3M sec-butyl lithium/cyclohexane was added to 5.1g (0.025 mol) of 1-dimethylaminomethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole in 100 mL of THF keeping the temperature below -50°C. The cooling bath was removed and the temperature allowed to reach 0°C and the bath then replaced. At -60°C, 3.32 mL (0.026 mol) of benzenesulfonyl chloride in 10 mL of THF was added, stirred 0.3 hours, the bath removed, and the temperature allowed to reach 20°C over 1 hour. To this mixture was added 100 mL of 1N HCl and 50 mL of EtOAc and the mixture stirred for 20 hours. After making basic with 5N NaOH, the EtOAc layer was separated, washed with water, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica eluting with toluene to give 1.37g (29% yield) of crude 2-chloro-5-methoxy-1H-indole. To this material (7.55 mmol) in 30 mL of THF was added 4.7 mL (7.55 mmol) of 1.6M n-butyl lithium/hexane keeping the temperature below 10°C with an ethanol-ice bath. After 0.25h, 7.55 mL (7.55 mmol) of 1M $ZnCl_2$ /ether was added, stirred 2 hours, concentrated at reduced pressure, and 40 mL of toluene added followed by 0.72 mL (7.55 mmol) of methyl 2-bromoacetate. The mixture was stirred for 18 hours, warmed at 76°C for 4h, cooled, and 50 mL of 1N HCl and 40 mL of EtOAc added. After 0.5 hour, the organic layer was separated, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica and eluted with a solvent gradient (toluene → 20% EtOAc/toluene) to give 0.79g (41% yield) of 2-chloro-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester, as an oil.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{12}H_{12}ClNO_3$: C, 56.82; H, 4.77; N, 5.52. Found: C, 56.47; H, 5.19; N, 4.99.

20 C. 2-Chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide. The method in Example 2, Part B, was used to react 660mg (2.6 mmol) of 2-chloro-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester, 140mg (3.5 mmol) of 60% NaH /mineral oil and 0.5 mL of benzyl bromide to give a material that was chromatographed on silica (eluted with 5% ether/hexane → 15% ether/hexane). This crude intermediate, 2-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester, weighed 710mg (79% yield). One mmol (344mg) of this material was dissolved in 20 mL of benzene, 5 mL of 0.67M $(CH_3)_2AlNH_2$ /benzene added, and the mixture heated to maintain reflux for 2 hours, an additional 5 mL of aluminum reagent added and heating continued for 1.5 hours. After cooling with an ice-bath, the mixture was decomposed with 1N HCl, extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution was washed with saturated $NaCl$, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated at reduced pressure. Chromatography of the residue on silica (eluted with CH_2Cl_2 → 2% $MeOH/CH_2Cl_2$) gave 50mg of starting material (ester) and 165mg (50% yield) of 2-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp. 166-168°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{18}H_{17}ClN_2O_2$: C, 66.07; H, 5.38; Cl, 10.76; N, 8.48. Found: C, 65.75; H, 5.21; Cl, 10.78; N, 8.52.

35 Example 12

Preparation of 5-Methoxy-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-Indole-3-acetamide

40 Sulfuryl chloride (0.8 mL, 10 mmol) was added to an ice-bath cooled solution of 1.0 mL of dimethyl disulfide in 25 mL of methylene chloride, the cooling bath removed, and the mixture allowed to warm to room temperature. Three mL of this solution (containing methanesulfonyl chloride) was added to 320mg (1.1 mmol) of 5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (Example 3) in 100 mL of methylene chloride, stirred 0.33 hours, saturated $NaHCO_3$ solution added, stirred well, and the methylene chloride solution separated, washed with saturated $NaCl$, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue chromatographed on silica was eluted with 40% EtOAc/hexane → 100% EtOAc to give 115mg (31% yield) of 5-methoxy-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 195-197°C.

45 Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{19}H_{20}N_2O_2S$: C, 67.03; H, 5.92; N, 8.22; S, 9.42. Found: C, 66.57; H, 5.93; N, 7.92; S, 9.88.

Example 13

Preparation of 5-Benzylxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide

50 5-Hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (400mg, 1.4 mmol) was dissolved in 50 mL of DMSO, 40mg (1.0 mmol) of 60% NaH /mineral oil added, stirred approximately 0.5 hour, 0.2 mL of benzyl bromide added and stirring maintained 2.5 hours. The mixture was diluted with water, extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with water, saturated $NaCl$ solution, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica (eluted with a gradient, CH_2Cl_2 → 2% $MeOH/CH_2Cl_2$) and crystallized from $CH_2Cl_2/MeOH$ to give 440mg (82% yield) of 5-benzylxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 118-120°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{25}H_{24}N_2O_2$: C, 78.10; H, 6.29; N, 7.29. Found: C, 77.56; H, 6.33; N, 7.16.

Example 14

5 Preparation of 1-Decyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A. 1-Decyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester. Using the method described in Example 1, Part D, 2.47g (10.0 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester was reacted with 1.12g (10.0 mmol) of potassium t-butoxide and 2.07 mL (10.0 mmol) of decyl bromide to give after chromatography on silica (eluting with 5% EtOAc/toluene) 2.16g (56% yield) of 1-decyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.

10 Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{24}H_{37}NO_3$: C, 74.38; H, 9.62; N, 3.61. Found: C, 74.53; H, 9.38; N, 3.57.

B. 1-Decyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide. A solution of 2.1g (5.4 mmol) of 1-decyl-ethoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester and 5 mL of hydrazine in 40 mL of EtOH was heated to maintain reflux for 5 hours, let stand 16 hours, the precipitate filtered and crystallized from MeOH to give 0.65g (32% yield) of 1-decyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide, mp, 129-131°C.

15 Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{22}H_{35}N_3O_2$: C, 70.74; H, 9.44; N, 11.25. Found: C, 70.79; H, 9.60; N, 11.13.

C. 1-Decyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide. Approximately 1.5g of Raney Ni was added to 1.5g (4.0 mmol) of 1-decyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide in 250 mL of EtOH and the mixture heated at reflux for 3 hours. After cooling the mixture was filtered and the filtrate concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from EtOAc/hexane to give 0.987g (69% yield) of 1-decyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 110-111°C.

20 Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{22}H_{34}N_2O_2$: C, 73.70; H, 9.56; N, 7.81. Found: C, 73.80; H, 9.36; N, 7.95.

25 **Example 15**

Preparation of 5-Aminocarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide

A. 5-Ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.

Dry hydrogen chloride was bubbled into a solution of 25g (0.1643 mol) of 4-hydrazinobenzoic acid and 20.5 mL (0.2 mol) of levulinic acid for 0.5 hours and the reaction mixture heated to maintain reflux for 20 hours. After cooling, the mixture was concentrated at reduced pressure, water added, and the mixture extracted with EtOAc/ether. After drying (Na_2SO_4), the solution was concentrated and the residue chromatographed on silica and eluted with a solvent gradient, (toluene \rightarrow 20% EtOAc/toluene) to give in the later fractions 12g of a mixture of 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester and the intermediate hydrazone. This mixture was treated again with dry HCl in 250 mL of EtOH and heated to maintain reflux for 16 hours. After cooling, the mixture was poured into water and extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with Na_2CO_3 solution and dried (Na_2SO_4). Silica chromatography (toluene \rightarrow 20% EtOAc/toluene) gave 3.6g (7.6% yield) of 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester, mp, 74-76°C.

40 Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{16}H_{19}NO_4$: C, 66.42; H, 6.62; N, 4.84. Found: C, 66.54; H, 5.00; N, 10.39.

B. 5-Ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.

Using the procedure described in Example 2, Part B, 2.18g (7.5 mmol) of 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester was reacted with 320mg (8 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and 1.0 mL (8.4 mmol) of benzyl bromide to give after silica chromatography (25% ether/hexane \rightarrow 50% ether/hexane) 1.6g (56%) of 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.

C. 5-Carboxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.

A solution of 1.6g (4.2 mmol) of 5-ethoxycarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester and 4.2 mL of 1N NaOH in 75 mL of EtOH was stirred 2.25 hours, 10 mL of 1N NaOH added, and stirred an additional 18.5 hours. The reaction mixture was acidified with 1N HCl, extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with saturated $NaCl$ solution, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was heated in 150 mL of EtOH for 4.5 hours, and left at room temperature for 96 hours. After concentrating at reduced pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica (25% ether/hexane \rightarrow 50% ether/hexane) to give 110mg (7.5% yield) of 5-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.

55 D. 5-Hydrazinocarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide.

Using the method described in Example 3, Part C, 110mg (0.31 mmol) of 5-carboxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester was reacted with 3 mL of hydrazine (total reflux time, 78 hours) to give on cooling of the reaction mixture 40mg (38% yield) of 5-hydrazinocarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide.

EP 0 620 215 A1

nylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide, mp, >255°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{15}H_{19}N_5O_2$: C, 64.94; H, 6.02; N, 19.93. Found: C, 65.15; H, 6.14; N, 19.82.

E. 5-Aminocarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

Using the method described in Example 3, Part D, 40mg (0.11 mmol) of 5-hydrazinocarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide was hydrogenated using approximately 1g of Raney nickel in 50 mL of EtOH to give after chromatography on silica (gradient, $CH_2Cl_2 \rightarrow 8\% MeOH/CH_2Cl_2$) 17mg (50% yield) of 5-aminocarbonyl-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{15}H_{19}N_3O_2$: C, 71.01; H, 5.98; N, 13.07. Found: C, 67.21; H, 5.76; N, 12.66.

10 Example 16

Preparation of 2-Methyl-5-nitro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A. 2-Methyl-5-nitro-1H-indole.

15 A solution of 17.0g (0.2 mol) of sodium nitrate in 150 mL of sulfuric acid was added dropwise to 26.9g (0.205 mol) of 2-methyl-1H-indole in 150 mL of sulfuric acid keeping the temperature at -10 to 0°C with an ethanol-water bath. After 0.25 hours, the mixture was poured onto ice, extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with water, Na_2CO_3 solution and dried (Na_2SO_4). After concentrating at reduced pressure, the residue was crystallized from EtOH to give 20.86g (59% yield) of 2-methyl-5-nitro-1H-indole, mp, 163-165°C.

20 Analyses: Calc'd for $C_9H_8N_2O_2$: C, 61.36; H, 4.58; N, 15.90. Found: C, 61.36; H, 4.61; N, 16.17.

B. 2-Methyl-5-nitro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole.

25 Hexane was used to wash 80mg (2.0 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and 6 mL of DMF was added followed by 352mg (2.0 mmol) of 2-methyl-5-nitro-1H-indole. After 0.33 hours, 0.24 mL (2.0 mmol) of benzyl bromide was added, stirred 0.5 hours and diluted with water. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc washed with a saturated NaCl solution, dried ($MgSO_4$) and on concentrating at reduced pressure, crystals formed. These were washed with MeOH to give 400mg (75% yield) of 2-methyl-5-nitro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole, mp, 150-152°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{15}H_{14}N_2O_2$: C, 72.17; H, 5.30; N, 10.52. Found: C, 72.37; H, 5.24; N, 10.53.

C. 2-Methyl-5-nitro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-glyoxylic acid amide.

30 To a cooled solution of 380mg (1.4 mmol) of 2-methyl-5-nitro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole in 10 mL of methylene chloride was added 0.12 mL of oxalyl chloride, the cooling bath was removed and the reaction mixture stirred for 3.0 hours. After concentrating at reduced pressure to a solid, the material was redissolved in 10 mL of methylene chloride and anhydrous ammonia bubbled in for approximately 5 minutes. After concentrating at reduced pressure, the residue was taken up in EtOAc, washed with water, NaCl solution, dried ($MgSO_4$), and concentrated. The residue was crystallized from MeOH to give 315mg (67% yield) of 2-methyl-5-nitro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-glyoxylic acid amide, mp, 204-206°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{15}H_{15}N_3O_4$: C, 64.09; H, 4.48; N, 12.46. Found: C, 64.32; H, 4.38; N, 12.44.

D. 2-Methyl-5-nitro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-glycolic acid amide.

40 To a mixture of 1.04g (3.1 mmol) of 2-methyl-5-nitro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-glyoxylic acid amide in 30 mL of EtOH was added 148mg (3.9 mmol) of $NaBH_4$, the mixture stirred for 1.0 hour and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was stirred with water and EtOAc and the insoluble material filtered to give 1.05mg (100% yield of 2-methyl-5-nitro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-glycolic acid amide, mp, 120-124°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{15}H_{17}N_3O_4$: C, 63.71; H, 5.05; N, 12.38. Found: C, 64.88; H, 5.38; N, 12.17.

E. 2-Methyl-5-nitro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

45 A solution of 0.927g (2.7 mmol) of 2-methyl-5-nitro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-glycolic acid amide in 15 mL of trifluoroacetic acid was treated with 1.0 mL (6.0 mmol) of triethylsilane and the mixture stirred for 1.0 hour. After concentrating at reduced pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica (eluted with EtOAc) and crystallized from MeOH/ CH_2Cl_2 to give 455mg (52% yield) of 2-methyl-5-nitro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 189-192°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{15}H_{17}N_3O_3$: C, 68.86; H, 5.30; N, 12.99. Found: C, 68.99; H, 5.26; N, 12.95.

Example 17

55 Preparation of 5-Amino-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide

A solution of 205mg (0.634 mmol) of 2-methyl-5-nitro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide in 30 mL of 2:1 THF/EtOH was hydrogenated at 60 psi (4218 g/cm²) of hydrogen for 4 hours using 0.1g of Pd/C as catalyst. The catalyst was filtered and the filtrate concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromato-

graphed on silica eluting with EtOAc and then 5% MeOH/EtOAc to give 52mg (28% yield) of 5-amino-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 175-178°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for C₁₈H₁₉N₃O: C, 73.69; H, 8.53; N, 14.32. Found: C, 73.90; H, 6.57; N, 14.25.

5 Example 18

Preparation of 2-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]acetic acid ethyl ester.

A. 5-(Carbethoxymethoxy)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid.

10 A solution of 590mg (2.0 mmol) of 5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid (Example 2, Part C) in 30 mL of THF and 10 mL of DMSO was treated with 180mg (4.5 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and after 10 minutes, 0.25 mL (2.25 mmol) of ethyl 2-bromoacetate was added. The mixture was stirred for 0.5 hour, acidified with 1N HCl and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with water, saturated NaCl solution, dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated at reduced pressure. After chromatography on silica (eluted with a gradient, CH₂Cl₂ → 3% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂) there was obtained 590mg (77% yield) of 5-(carbethoxymethoxy)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid.

15 B. 2-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]acetic acid ethyl ester. While cooling at -5°C, 0.16 mL (2.1 mmol) of methyl chloroformate was added to 630mg (1.6 mmol) of 5-(carbethoxymethoxy)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid and 0.3 mL (2.2 mmol) of triethylamine in 30 mL of CH₂Cl₂ and stirred 10 minutes. Anhydrous ammonia was bubbled into the reaction mixture for 0.5 hour, the mixture washed with water, saturated NaCl solution, dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica and eluted with a gradient (CH₂Cl₂ → 3% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂) to give after crystallization from ether 270mg (44% yield) of 2-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]acetic acid ethyl ester, mp, 160-161°C.

20 Analyses: Calc'd for C₂₂H₂₄N₂O₄: C, 69.46; H, 6.36; N, 7.36. Found: C, 69.69; H, 6.38; N, 7.18.

Example 19

Preparation of 2-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]acetic acid.

30 A solution of 190mg (0.5 mmol) of 2-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]acetic acid ethyl ester and 2 mL of 5N NaOH in 30 mL of EtOH and 10 mL of THF was stirred for approximately 15 hours, the mixture made acidic with 5N HCl and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with saturated NaCl solution, dried (Na₂SO₄), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was washed with ether to give 155mg (90% yield) of 2-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]acetic acid, mp, 196-198°C.

35 Analyses: Calc'd for C₂₀H₂₀N₂O₄: C, 68.17; H, 5.72; N, 7.95. Found: C, 68.35; H, 5.73; N, 7.73.

Example 20

40 Preparation of 3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]-propanic acid methyl ester.

45 5-Hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (550mg, 1.8 mmol), 550mg (4 mmol) of K₂CO₃ and 0.2 mL of methyl acrylate in 40 mL of acetone was heated to maintain reflux for 100 hours (additional methyl acrylate was added at various times). After cooling, the mixture was diluted with water, extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with saturated NaCl solution and dried (Na₂SO₄). After concentrating, the residue was chromatographed on silica (eluted with CH₂Cl₂ → 1% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂) and crystallized from CH₂Cl₂/ether to give 375mg (55% yield) of 3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]-propanic acid methyl ester, mp, 113-115°C.

50 Analyses: Calc'd for C₂₂H₂₄N₂O₄: C, 69.48; H, 6.36; N, 7.36. Found: C, 69.52; H, 6.38; N, 7.33.

Example 21

3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]-propanic acid.

55 A. 3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]-propanic acid benzyl ester. Using the procedure described in Example 21, 270mg (0.92 mmol) of 5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, 0.5g of potassium carbonate and 1 mL of benzyl acrylate in 30 mL of MEK were reacted to give 130mg of 3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]-propanic acid benzyl ester (chromatographed on silica, eluted with CH₂Cl₂ → 7% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂).

B. 3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propanoic acid. A mixture of 130mg (0.29 mmol) of 3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propanoic acid benzyl ester and 0.2g of 10% Pd/C was hydrogenated at 40 psi (2812 g/cm²) of hydrogen for 4.5 hours. The mixture was filtered, and concentrated until the product crystallized. These were washed with ether to give 80mg (75% yield) of 3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propanoic acid, mp, 201-203°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for C₂₁H₂₂N₂O₄: C, 68.84; H, 6.05; N, 7.65. Found: C, 65.88; H, 6.32; N, 6.68.

Example 22

10 4-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.
 A solution of 430mg (1.5 mmol) of 5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (Example 2, Part D) in 50 mL of DMSO was treated with 60mg (1.5 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil, and then with 0.26 mL (1.8 mmol) of benzyl bromide. The mixture was stirred 1.5 hours at room temperature, 85°C for 1.5 hours, and room temperature for 16 hours. It was diluted with water, extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with water, saturated NaCl solution, dried (Na₂SO₄), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica (CH₂Cl₂ → 3% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂) to give 315mg (51% yield) of 4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester. This material was stirred with 1 mL of 5N NaOH in 15 mL of EtOH for 20 hours. The mixture was acidified with 5N HCl, extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with saturated NaCl solution and dried (Na₂SO₄). On concentrating the EtOAc solution, a precipitate formed and was collected to give 245mg (38% yield) of 4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid, mp, 218-221°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for C₂₂H₂₄N₂O₄: C, 69.46; H, 6.36; N, 7.36. Found: C, 68.35; H, 6.36; N, 7.00.

Example 23

Preparation of 5-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]pentanoic acid.

As described in Example 23, 125mg (0.43 mmol) of 5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (Example 2), 30mg of 60% NaH/mineral oil, and 0.1 mL of 5-bromopentanoic acid methyl ester in 15 mL of DMSO were reacted to give 80mg of 5-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]pentanoic acid methyl ester, after chromatography on silica (eluted with CH₂Cl₂ → 2% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂). This material in 5 mL of THF and 15 mL of EtOH was treated with 2 mL of 2N NaOH and the mixture stirred for 18 hours. After acidifying with 5N HCl, the mixture was extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with saturated NaCl solution, dried (Na₂SO₄), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in MeOH/CH₂Cl₂, concentrated and diluted with ether to give 80mg (100% yield) of 5-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]pentanoic acid, mp, 168-169°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for C₂₃H₂₆N₂O₄: C, 70.03; H, 6.84; N, 7.10. Found: C, 43.53; H, 4.20; N, 4.31.

Example 24

4-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

A solution of 140mg (0.43 mmol) of 2-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (Example 11) in 20 mL of methylene chloride was treated with 2 mL of 1M BBr₃CH₂Cl₂, stirred for 1.5 hours, stirred with aqueous HCl, the CH₂Cl₂ solvent separated, and washed with water, saturated NaCl solution and dried (Na₂SO₄). On concentrating at reduced pressure, there was obtained 140mg of crude 2-chloro-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide. This material was dissolved in 15 mL of DMSO, 20 mg of 60% NaH/mineral oil added, and after 5 minutes, 0.1 mL of ethyl 4-bromobutyrate was added. The reaction mixture was heated by oil bath at 70°C for 70 minutes. After cooling, the mixture was diluted with water, extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with water, saturated NaCl solution and dried (Na₂SO₄). After concentrating, a residue was obtained that was chromatographed on silica (eluted with CH₂Cl₂ → 3% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂) to give 105mg of 4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester. This ester (105mg) was dissolved in 15 mL of EtOH, 1 mL of 5N NaOH added, and the solution stirred for 18 hours. The mixture was made acidic with 5N HCl, and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with saturated NaCl solution, dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in MeOH/CH₂Cl₂, the solution concentrated, to give 75mg (80% yield) of 4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid, mp, 198-200°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for C₂₁H₂₁ClN₂O₄: C, 62.92; H, 5.28; N, 6.99. Found: C, 58.94; H, 4.97; N, 6.41.

Example 25

Preparation of 3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]amino]propanoic acid methyl ester.

5 A solution of 147mg (0.5 mmol) of 5-amino-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (Example 18) and 2 mL of methyl acrylate in 5 mL of MeOH was stirred for 65 hours, then concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica and eluted with a gradient (EtOAc → 5% MeOH/EtOAc) to give a major product and a minor product in the later fractions. The major product was 105mg (55% yield) of 3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]amino]propanoic acid methyl ester.

10 Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{22}H_{25}N_3O_3$: C, 69.64; H, 6.64 N, 11.07. Found: C, 69.87; H, 6.39; N, 11.10.

Example 26

Preparation of 3,3'-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]imino]bis[propanoic acid] dimethyl ester.

From the chromatography of the reaction products obtained in Example 25, the later fractions contained the minor product, 3,3'-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]imino]bis[propanoic acid] dimethyl ester, which, after drying, weighed 52mg.

Example 27

Preparation of 3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]amino]propanoic acid.

One mL of 1N NaOH was added to a solution of 110mg (0.3 mmol) of 3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]amino]propanoic acid methyl ester (Example 26) in 5 mL of MeOH, stirred 1.0 hour, then 1 mL of 1N NaOH was added and the mixture stirred 0.5 hour. Water was added, then 2 mL of 1N HCl, and the mixture extracted with EtOAc. This was dried ($MgSO_4$) and concentrated at reduced pressure to give 21mg (20% yield) of 3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]amino]propanoic acid.

Example 28

Preparation of 3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]amino]propanoic acid hydrazide.

Hydrazine was added to 151mg (0.4 mmol) of 3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]amino]propanoic acid methyl ester in 5 mL of MeOH and the mixture heated at reflux for 1.0 hour and stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. After diluting with water, the mixture was extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with saturated NaCl solution, dried ($MgSO_4$) and concentrated at reduced pressure.

Example 29

Preparation of 6-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A. 1-[2-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino)-4-methoxyphenyl]-2-propanone. 12g (87 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methylaniline was treated by the method in Example 1, Part A, with 19g (87 mmol) of di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate to give on concentrating a reaction mixture containing 16.4g (80% yield) of N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-5-methoxy-2-methylaniline. This material (69 mmol) was reacted with 106 mL of 1.3M sec-butyl lithium in cyclohexane and then 7.1g (69 mmol) of N-methoxy-N-methylacetamide (as described in Example 9, Part B) to give after chromatography on silica, eluting with 33% EtOAc/hexane, 13.8g (72% yield) of 1-[2-(*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino)-4-methoxyphenyl]-2-propanone.

Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{15}H_{21}N_2O_4$: C, 64.50; H, 7.58; N, 5.01. Found: C, 63.80; H, 7.32; N, 5.48.

B. 6-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-glyoxylic acid amide. Using the method in Example 9, Part C, 13.7g (49 mmol) of 1-[2-(*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino)-4-methoxyphenyl]-2-propanone was reacted with 20 mL of trifluoroacetic acid and the product chromatographed on silica eluting with 20% EtOAc/hexane. There was obtained 4.8g (61% yield) of crude 6-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole. By the method in Example 6, Part A, this material (30mmol) was treated with 1.2g (30 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and 3.6 mL of benzyl bromide in DMF to give after chromatography on silica (eluting with 25% EtOAc/hexane) 4.77g (63% yield) of 6-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole. By the method in Example 16, Part C, 1.97g (8 mmol) of 6-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole was reacted with 0.73 mL (8.4 mmol) of oxalyl chloride and then ammonia to give 0.875g (34% yield) of 6-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole.

3-glyoxylic acid amide from EtOAc, mp, 230-234°C.

Analysis: Calc'd for C₁₉H₂₀N₂O₃: C, 70.79; H, 5.63; N, 8.69. Found: C, 70.11; H, 5.71; N, 8.70.

5 C. 6-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-glycolic acid amide. Using EtOH as a solvent, 4.15g (12.9 mmol) of 6-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-glyoxylic acid amide (Example 16) was reacted with 0.605g (16 mmol) of NaBH₄ by the method used in Example 17, Part A, and the crude product was washed with EtOAc and water to give 2.6134g (63%) of 6-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-glycolic acid amide, mp, 198-198°C.

Analysis: Calc'd for C₁₉H₂₀N₂O₂: C, 70.35; H, 6.22; N, 8.64. Found: C, 70.49; H, 6.23; N, 8.85.

10 D. 6-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide. Using the method in Example 17, Part B, 720mg (2.2 mmol) of 6-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-glycolic acid amide, 0.4 mL (2.5 mmol) of triethylsilane, and 10 mL of trifluoroacetic acid were reacted and the product chromatographed on silica (eluting with 33% EtOAc/hexane) and crystallized from methylene chloride/MeOH to give 164mg (24% yield) of 6-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 136-139°C.

15 Analysis: Calc'd for C₁₉H₂₀N₂O₂: C, 74.00; H, 6.54; N, 9.08. Found: C, 73.72; H, 6.57; N, 9.00.

Example 30

Preparation of 6-Hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

20 To a solution of 1.53g (5 mmol) of 6-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide was added 20 mL (20 mmol) of 1M BBr₃ in methylene chloride and the mixture stirred for 3 hours. Water was added and the mixture extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with a NaCl solution, dried (MgSO₄), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica and the product eluted with 5% MeOH/methylene chloride to give 658mg (45% yield) of 6-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 174-179°C.

25 Analysis: Calc'd for C₁₈H₁₈N₂O₂: C, 73.45; H, 6.16; N, 9.52. Found: C, 72.43; H, 6.08; N, 9.92.

Example 31

30 Preparation of 4-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-6-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester.

35 A solution of 294mg (1 mmol) of 6-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide was treated with 40mg (1 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and after 1 hours, 0.15 mL (1 mmol) of ethyl 4-bromobutyrate was added. The mixture was stirred for 2 hours, diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with NaCl solution, dried (MgSO₄), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica eluting with EtOAc to give (after crystallizing from CH₂Cl₂/MeOH/hexane, 228mg (76% yield) of 4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-6-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester, mp, 126-133°C.

Analysis: Calc'd for C₂₄H₂₈N₂O₄: C, 70.57; H, 6.91; N, 6.86. Found: C, 70.47; H, 6.97; N, 6.80.

Example 32

Preparation of 4-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-6-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

40 A solution of 100mg (0.245 mmol) of 4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-6-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester and 2 mL of 1N NaOH in 5 mL of EtOH was stirred for 1.5 hours, diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc. The aqueous layer was made acidic to pH 6 with 1N HCl and extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc dried (MgSO₄), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from MeOH/CH₂Cl₂ to give 44mg (47% yield) of 4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-6-yl]oxy]butanoic acid, mp, 180-184°C.

45 Analysis: Calc'd for C₂₂H₂₄N₂O₄: C, 69.48; H, 6.36; N, 7.36. Found: C, 69.68; H, 6.38; N, 6.37.

Example 33

50 Preparation of 5-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-6-yl]oxy]pentanoic acid ethyl ester.

55 Using the procedure in Example 33, 147mg (0.5 mmol) of 6-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide was reacted with 20mg (0.5 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and 0.08 mL (0.05 mmol) of ethyl 5-bromovalerate. After chromatography on silica (eluting first with 50% EtOAc/hexane, then EtOAc) and crystallization from MeOH/CH₂Cl₂ there was obtained 150mg (71% yield) of 5-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-

1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-6-yl] xylo pentanoic acid ethyl ester, mp, 123-135°C.

Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{25}H_{30}N_2O_4$: C, 71.07; H, 7.16; N, 6.63. Found: C, 71.20; H, 7.15; N, 6.73.

Example 34

5

Preparation of 5-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-6-yl]oxy]pentanoic acid.

As in Example 34, 100mg (0.24 mmol) of 5-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-6-yl]oxy]pentanoic acid ethyl ester was hydrolyzed with 2 mL of 1N NaOH to give after crystallization from MeOH/CH₂Cl₂ 53mg (56% yield) of 5-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-6-yl]oxy]pentanoic acid, mp, 103-107°C.

10

Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{23}H_{28}N_2O_4$: C, 70.03; H, 6.64; N, 7.10. Found: C, 69.78; H, 6.81; N, 7.34.

Example 35

15

Preparation of 4-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A. N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-3-methoxy-2-methylaniline. By the method in Example 1, Part A, 25.8g (188 mmol) of 3-methoxy-2-methylaniline was treated with 41g (188 mmol) of di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate to give by chromatography on silica (eluted with 25% EtOAc/hexane) 16.4g (80% yield) of N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-3-methoxy-2-methylaniline.

20

Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{13}H_{18}NO_3$: C, 65.80; H, 8.07; N, 5.90. Found: C, 64.31; H, 7.76; N, 6.58.

B. 4-Methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole.

N-*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl-3-methoxy-2-methylaniline (43g, 0.18 mol) was reacted with 280 mL (0.36 mol) of 1.3M sec-butyl lithium in cyclohexane and then 18.5g (0.18 mol) of N-methoxy-N-methylacetamide as described in Example 9, Part B to give 39.5g of a mixture of 1-[2-(*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino)-6-methoxyphenyl]-2-propanone and starting anilide. This mixture was dissolved in 100 mL of methylene chloride and 40 mL of trifluoroacetic acid and stirred for a total of 26 hours. The mixture was washed with water, dried ($MgSO_4$) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica eluting with 20% EtOAc/hexane to give on crystallization from CH₂Cl₂/hexane 13.9g of 4-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole, mp, 80-86°C.

30

Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{10}H_{14}NO$: C, 74.51; H, 6.88; N, 8.69. Found: C, 74.41; H, 7.08; N, 8.47.

C. 4-Methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester. Using the procedure in Example 1, Part C, 13.9g (86 mmol) of 4-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole, 54 mL (86 mmol) of 1.6M n-butyl lithium/hexane, and 86 mL (86 mmol) of 1M $ZnCl_2$ /ether were reacted to give after silica chromatography (eluted with 20% EtOAc/hexane) 11.2g (53% yield) of 4-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester, mp, 117-121°C.

35

Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{14}H_{17}NO_3$: C, 68.00; H, 6.93; N, 5.66. Found: C, 68.29; H, 6.98; N, 5.73.

D. 4-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester. Using the method in Example 16, Part B, 7.4g (30 mmol) of 4-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester, 1.2g (30 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and 3.6 mL (30 mmol) of benzyl bromide were reacted to give after chromatography on silica and crystallization from MeOH/hexane, 6.16g (61% yield) of 4-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester, mp, 75-80°C.

40

Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{21}H_{23}NO_3$: C, 74.75; H, 6.87; N, 4.15. Found: C, 74.93; H, 6.66; N, 4.02.

E. 4-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide. A solution of 2.8g (8.3 mmol) of 4-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester and 10 mL of hydrazine in 40 mL of EtOH was heated to maintain reflux for 16 hours, diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with NaCl solution, dried ($MgSO_4$), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from MeOH to give 2.0g (75% yield) of 4-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide, mp, 145-147°C.

45

Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{19}H_{21}N_3O_2$: C, 70.56; H, 6.55; N, 12.99. Found: C, 70.82; H, 6.87; N, 13.18.

F. 4-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide. A mixture of 2.0g (6.2 mmol) of 4-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide and approximately 1g of Raney Ni were heated at reflux temperature for 1 hour, cooled, methylene chloride added and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated at reduced pressure and the residue chromatographed on silica eluting with 5% MeOH/EtOAc to give 1.5g (79% yield) of 4-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 145-146°C.

50

Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{19}H_{20}N_2O_2$: C, 74.08; H, 6.54; N, 9.08. Found: C, 75.09; H, 6.48; N, 9.20.

Example 36

Preparation of 4-Hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A solution of 1.45g (4.7 mmol) of 4-methoxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 14.1 mL (14.1 mmol) of 1M BBr_3 in methylene chloride was reacted as described in Example 2, Part C to give after chromatography on silica (eluted with EtOAc/hexane, then EtOAc) 908mg (66% yield) of 4-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 200-208°C.

Analysis: Calc'd for $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{18}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$: C, 73.45; H, 6.18; N, 9.52. Found: C, 73.70; H, 6.420; N, 9.52.

Example 37

Preparation of 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester.

A solution of 294mg (1 mmol) of 4-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide was treated with 40mg (1 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and after 1 hour, 0.15 mL (1 mmol) of ethyl 4-bromobutyrate was added. The mixture was stirred for 2 hours, diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed with NaCl solution, dried (MgSO_4), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from MeOH/hexane to give a total of 235mg (58% yield) of 4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester, mp, 115-116°C.

Analysis: Calc'd for $\text{C}_{24}\text{H}_{28}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$: C, 70.57; H, 6.91; N, 6.86. Found: C, 70.68; H, 6.97; N, 7.02.

Example 38

Preparation of 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

A solution of 100mg (0.245 mmol) of 4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester and 2 mL of 1N NaOH in 5 mL of EtOH was stirred for 3.0 hours, diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc. The aqueous layer was made acidic to pH 6 with 1N HCl and extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc dried (MgSO_4), and on concentrating at reduced pressure a precipitate formed that was separated and washed with MeOH to give 40mg (42% yield) of 4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]butanoic acid, mp, 192-193°C.

Analysis: Calc'd for $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{24}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$: C, 69.46; H, 6.36; N, 7.36. Found: C, 68.17; H, 6.05; N, 6.99.

Example 39

Preparation of 2-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester.

Using the procedure in Example 37, 294mg (1 mmol) of 4-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide was treated with 40mg (1 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and 0.10 mL (1 mmol) of methyl 2-bromoacetate to give, after silica chromatography (eluted with 50%EtOAc/hexane, then EtOAc, followed by 2%MeOH/EtOAc), 278mg (76% yield) of 2-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester, mp, 206-208°C.

Analysis: Calc'd for $\text{C}_{24}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$: C, 68.84; H, 6.05; N, 6.85. Found: C, 769.06; H, 5.87; N, 7.40.

Example 40

Preparation of 2-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid.

A solution of 100mg (0.245 mmol) of 2-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester and 2 mL of 1N NaOH in 5 mL of EtOH was stirred for 2.0 hours, diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc. The aqueous layer was made acidic to pH 6 with 1N HCl and extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc dried (MgSO_4), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from MeOH to give 54mg (57% yield) of 2-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid, mp, 225-227°C.

Analysis: Calc'd for $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{20}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$: C, 68.17; H, 5.72; N, 7.95. Found: C, 68.35; H, 5.79; N, 7.94.

Example 41

Preparation of [3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid.

5 A. [3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphoric acid dimethyl ester. Using the procedure described in Example 39, 147mg (0.5 mmol) of 5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide was reacted with 20mg (0.5 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and then 80mg (0.0 mmol) of 3-bromopropylphosphonic acid dimethyl ester. The final product was crystallized from MeOH/hexane to give 126mg (57% yield) of [3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester, mp, 136-138°C.

10 Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{23}H_{29}N_2O_5P$: C, 62.15; H, 6.58; N, 6.30. Found: C, 61.09; H, 6.71; N, 5.94.
 B. [3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid. A solution of 100mg (0.23 mmol) of [3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester and 0.24 mL (1.8 mmol) of bromotrimethylsilane in 2 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated at reduced pressure, 5 mL of MeOH added, stirred 0.5 hour, and concentrated. The residue was crystallized from EtOAc/MeCN/HOAc/H₂O to give 40mg (42% yield) of [3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid, mp, 201-203°C.

15 Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{21}H_{26}N_2O_5P$: C, 60.57; H, 8.05; N, 6.73. Found: C, 60.53; H, 8.08; N, 6.74.

Example 42

Preparation of 2-Bromo-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

20 A. 2-Bromo-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid benzyl ester. N-Bromosuccinimide (450mg, 2.5 mmol) was added to 910mg (2.5 mmol) of 5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid benzyl ester in 75 mL of carbon tetrachloride and the mixture stirred for 0.5 hour. After washing with Na₂S₂O₃ solution, water and saturated NaCl solution and drying (Na₂SO₄), the CCl₄ was removed at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica (eluted with methylene chloride) and crystallized from ether/hexane to give 765mg (67% yield) of 2-bromo-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid benzyl ester, mp, 89-90°C.

25 Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{25}H_{22}BrNO_3$: C, 64.66; H, 4.78; N, 3.02. Found: C, 64.43; H, 4.75; N, 2.96.
 B. 2-Bromo-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide. A solution of 120mg (0.26 mmol) of 2-bromo-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid benzyl ester and 2 mL of 0.67M (CH₃)₂AlNH₂/benzene in 30 20 mL of benzene was heated for 23.5 hours while adding additional aluminum reagent periodically. The mixture was poured onto ice, decomposed with 1N HCl, and extracted with EtOAc. The extract was washed with saturated NaCl solution, dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica eluting with a gradient, CH₂Cl₂ → 2%MeOH/CH₂Cl₂, to give 100mg (100% yield) of 2-bromo-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 172-174°C.

35 Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{18}H_{17}BrN_2O_2$: C, 57.92; H, 4.59; N, 7.50; Br, 21.41. Found: C, 57.71; H, 4.56; N, 7.42; Br, 21.67.

Example 43

40 Preparation of 4-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-Indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

A solution of 800mg (1.6 mmol) of 2-bromo-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (it was contaminated with 2,4-dibromo-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide) and 10 mL of 1M BBr/CH₂Cl₂ in 100 mL of CH₂Cl₂ was stirred for 2.5 hours, 100 mL of 1N HCl added, stirred well, and the CH₂Cl₂ layer separated. After washing and drying (Na₂SO₄), the solvent was removed at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica and eluted with a gradient (1%MeOH/CH₂Cl₂ → 4%MeOH/CH₂Cl₂) to give in the early fractions 2,4-dibromo-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (115mg) and in the later fractions 2-bromo-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (115mg). The material from the later fractions (100mg, 0.28 mmol) was dissolved in 20 mL of DMSO, 20mg of 60% NaH/mineral was added, and after 10 minutes, 0.1 mL of ethyl 4-bromobutyrate was added. After heating for 1.25 hours at 85°C, the mixture was diluted with water, extracted with EtOAc, and the EtOAc solution washed with water, saturated NaCl solution, dried (Na₂SO₄), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica (eluted with 1%MeOH/CH₂Cl₂ → 3%MeOH/CH₂Cl₂) to give 80mg of 4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester as an oil. This material was dissolved in 20 mL of EtOH, 1 mL of 2N NaOH added, and the mixture stirred for 19 hours. After acidifying with 1N HCl, the mixture was extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with saturated NaCl solution, dried (Na₂SO₄), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from EtOH/ether to give 80mg of 4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{21}H_{21}BrN_2O_4$: C, 56.64; H, 4.75; N, 6.29. Found: C, 42.71; H, 3.76; N, 4.50.

Example 44**Preparation of 5-Hydroxy-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.**

5 A solution of 600mg (1.6 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (Example 12) was reacted with 10 mL of 1M BBr₃/CH₂Cl₂ as described in Example 2, Part C, to give as crude product 440mg (64% yield) of 5-hydroxy-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

Analysis: Calc'd for C₁₈H₁₈N₂O₂S: C, 66.23; H, 5.56; N, 8.58; S, 9.82. Found: C, 66.45; H, 5.55; N, 8.29; S, 9.72.

Example 45**Preparation of 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester.**

15 A solution of 465mg (1.4 mmol) of 5-hydroxy-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (Example 46), 60mg (1.5 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and 0.25 mL (1.7 mmol) of ethyl 4-bromobutyrate was reacted as in Example 45. After washing the crude product with EtOH/ether, there was obtained 510mg (83% yield) of 4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester, mp, 109-111°C.

20 Analysis: Calc'd for C₂₄H₂₈N₂O₄S: C, 65.43; H, 6.41; N, .38; S, 7.28. Found: C, 65.24; H, 6.44; N, 6.12; S, 7.30.

Example 46**Preparation of 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.**

25 As described in Example 45, 245mg (0.56 mmol) of 4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester (Example 47) was hydrolyzed with 1 mL of 5N NaOH in 5 mL of THF and 15 mL of EtOH. The crude product was washed with EtOH/ether to give 195mg (85% yield) of 4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid, mp, 187-188°C.

30 Analysis: Calc'd for C₂₂H₂₄N₂O₄S: C, 64.05; H, 5.86; N, 6.79; S, 7.77. Found: C, 63.81; H, 5.89; N, 6.80; S, 7.68.

Example 47**Preparation of 5-(4-Amino-4-oxobutoxy)-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.**

35 Ten mL of 0.6M (CH₃)₂AlNH₂/benzene was added to 200mg (0.45 mmol) of 4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methylthio-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester (Example 46) in 25 mL of benzene and the mixture heated at 50°C for 1.75 hours. After cooling the mixture was decomposed with ice and 1N HCl added. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with saturated NaCl solution, dried (Na₂SO₄), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from EtOH/CH₂Cl₂ to give 155mg (84% yield) of 5-(4-amino-4-oxobutoxy)-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 185°C.

40 Analysis: Calc'd for C₂₂H₂₅N₃O₃S: C, 64.21; H, 6.12; N, 10.21; S, 7.79. Found: C, 64.42; H, 6.54; N, 8.97; S, 7.11.

Example 48**Preparation of 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.**

45 A. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester. Using the method described in Example 6, Part A, 2.0g (8.12 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester was reacted with 0.325g of 60% NaH/mineral oil and 1.84g (8.1 mmol) of tetradecyl bromide to give after chromatography on silica (eluting with 15% EtOAc/hexane) 1.66g (46% yield) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.

50 Analysis: Calc'd for C₂₈H₄₅NO₃: C, 75.80; H, 10.22; N, 3.16. Found: C, 75.93; H, 10.32; N, 3.28.

B. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid. A solution of 1.60g (3.6 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester and 10 mL of 1N NaOH in 25 mL of MeOH was stirred 16 hours, made acidic with 1N HCl, and the precipitate filtered to give 1.36g (90% yield) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid, mp, 105-107°C.

55 Analysis: Calc'd for C₂₈H₄₄NO₃: C, 75.40; H, 9.94; N, 3.37. Found: C, 78.96; H, 10.37; N, 3.57.

5 C. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide. Oxalyl chloride (1 mL) was added to 1.36g (3.2 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid in 50 mL of methylene chloride and 1 drop of DMF and after stirring for 1 hour, the reaction mixture was concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in 50 mL of THF and anhydrous ammonia bubbled in for 0.5 hour. After diluting with EtOAc, the mixture was washed with water, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated. the residue was chromatographed on silica and eluted with 2% MeOH/methylene chloride to give 0.42g (32% yield) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 117-118°C.

Analysis: Calc'd for $\text{C}_{24}\text{H}_{42}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$: C, 75.32; H, 10.21; N, 6.76. Found: C, 74.41; H, 9.87; N, 7.87.

10 **Example 49**

Preparation of 4-[[2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

15 A. 5-Hydroxy-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide. A solution of 300mg (0.75 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide (Example 14, Part C) in 30 mL of methylene chloride was treated with 2 mL of 1N $\text{BBr}_3/\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ and the mixture stirred for 3 hours. The mixture was poured into water and 100 mL of EtOAc and the organic layer separated, washed with Na_2CO_3 solution, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure to give approximately 300mg of crude 5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

Analysis: Calc'd for $\text{C}_{25}\text{H}_{40}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$: C, 74.96; H, 10.06; N, 6.99. Found: C, 74.51; H, 9.55; N, 8.31.

20 B. 4-[[2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester.

25 5-Hydroxy-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide. (300mg, 0.75 mmol) was dissolved in 10 mL of DMF, 40mg (1.0 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil added, and the mixture stirred for 0.5 hour. Thereafter, 0.143 mL (1.0 mmol) of ethyl 4-bromobutyrate was added, the mixture stirred for 20 hours., diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc solution was washed 4 times with water, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from EtOH/water to give 0.12mg (31% yield) of 4-[[2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester, mp, 77-78°C.

Analysis: Calc'd for $\text{C}_3\text{H}_{50}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$: C, 72.34; H, 9.79; N, 5.44. Found: C, 72.13; H, 9.63; N, 5.17.

30 C. 4-[[2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid. A solution of 120mg (0.233 mmol) of 4-[[2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester and 1 mL of 5N NaOH in 20 mL of MeOH was heated to maintain reflux for 1 hour, cooled and poured into 100 mL of water and made acidic with 5N HCl. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from MeOH to give 50mg (44% yield) of 4-[[2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-tetradecyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid, mp, 159-161°C.

35 Analysis: Calc'd for $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{46}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$: C, 71.57; H, 9.53; N, 5.76. Found: C, 71.44; H, 9.39; N, 5.70.

Example 50

40 Preparation of [4-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-hexyl-2-methyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

45 A. 1-Hexyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester was dissolved in 25 mL of DMF and 0.3g(7.5 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil was added. After 0.25 hours, 1.1 mL(7.5 mmol) of hexyl iodide was added and the mixture stirred for 16 hours. The mixture was diluted with water, extracted with ethyl acetate and the ethyl acetate solution washed with water. After drying (Na_2SO_4), the solution was concentrated at reduced pressure and the residue chromatographed on silica gel(eluted with 5% EtOAc/toluene) to give 1.01g(61% yield) of 1-hexyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.

50

Analysis for $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{29}\text{NO}_3$:			
Calculated	C, 74.75;	H, 5.96;	N, 4.36.
Found	C, 70.31;	H, 8.68;	N, 3.93.

55 B. 1-Hexyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A 2M solution of $\text{Al}(\text{CH}_3)_3$ /toluene (15 mL, 0.03 mol) was added to 1.61g (0.03 mol) of ammonium chloride while slowly keeping the temperature at 5-7°C with an ice-water bath. The bath was removed, the mixture stirred for 0.5 hour and 1.01g (3.05 mmol) of 1-hexyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl

ester was added. After stirring for 16 hours, 10 mL of water was added cautiously and the mixture added to 1N HCl and a large volume of ethyl acetate. The organic layer was separated, washed with water, sodium bicarbonate solution and dried (Na_2SO_4). After removing the solvent at reduced pressure the residue was crystallized from MeOH/water to give 0.37g (40% yield) of 1-hexyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 120-121°C.

5

10

Analysis for $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{26}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$:			
Calculated	C, 71.49;	H, 8.67;	N, 9.26.
Found	C, 71.64;	H, 8.54;	N, 9.21.

15

C. 1-Hexyl-5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A mixture of 1 mL of 1M BBr_3 /methylene chloride and 0.24g (0.79 mmol) of 1-hexyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide in 20 mL of methylene chloride as stirred for 16 hours, diluted with ethyl acetate and washed twice with water. The solution was dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent removed at reduced pressure to give 0.23g of crude 1-hexyl-5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

15

D. [4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-hexyl-2-methyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester.

20

1-Hexyl-5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide (230mg, 0.8 mmol) was dissolved in 10 mL of DMF and 26mg (0.8 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil added. The mixture was stirred for 1 hour, 0.115 mL (0.8 mmol) of ethyl 4-bromobutyrate added and stirring continued for 96 hours. The mixture was diluted with water, extracted with ethyl acetate, the ethyl acetate washed with water and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solution was concentrated at reduced pressure and the residue chromatographed on silica gel (eluted with 3% MeOH/methylene chloride) to give 170mg (53% yield) of [4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-hexyl-2-methyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester, mp, 69-71°C.

25

30

Analysis for $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{34}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$:			
Calculated	C, 68.63;	H, 8.51;	N, 6.98.
Found	C, 68.90;	H, 8.59;	N, 6.80.

35

E. [4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-hexyl-2-methyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

A mixture of 170mg(0.42 mmol) of [4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-hexyl-2-methyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester and 1 mL of 5N NaOH in 20 mL of MeOH was heated to maintain reflux for 2.5 hours, cooled, poured into water and made strongly acidic with 5N HCl. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, dried (Na_2SO_4), concentrated at reduced pressure and the residue crystallized from MeOH. There was obtained 37mg(24% yield) of [4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-hexyl-2-methyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid. mp, 169-170°C.

40

Analysis for $\text{C}_{21}\text{H}_{30}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$:			
Calculated	C, 67.35;	H, 8.07;	N, 7.48.
Found	C, 67.59;	H, 8.06	N, 7.42.

45

Example 51

5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-octyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

50

A. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-octyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.

Using the procedure described in Example 50, Part A, 2.47g(0.01 mol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester was reacted with 0.48g (0.012 mol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and then 2.17 mL(0.012 mol) of iodooctane. The product was chromatographed on silica gel and eluted with 5% EtOAc/toluene to give 1.85g(51% yield) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-octyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester as an oil.

55

Analysis for $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{33}\text{NO}_3$:

Calculated C, 73.50; H, 9.25; N, 3.90.
 Found C, 73.47; H, 9.33; N, 3.83.

5 B. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-octyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide.
 A mixture of 1.8g(5 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-octyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl and 3 mL of hydrazine in 125 mL of ethanol was heated to maintain reflux for 16 hours. The mixture was poured into water, extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with water and dried (Na_2SO_4). After removing the solvent at reduced pressure the residue was crystallized from EtOH/water to give 1.29g(75% yield) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-octyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide, mp, 135-136°C.

Analysis for $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{31}\text{N}_3\text{O}_2$:			
Calculated	C, 69.53;	H, 9.04;	N, 12.16.
Found	C, 69.69;	H, 9.07;	N, 11.89.

10 C. 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-octyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.
 A mixture of 1.27g (3.68 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-octyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide and 1g of Raney Ni in 60 mL of ethanol was heated to maintain reflux for 3 hours, cooled, the solvent poured off the settled catalyst, treated with filter aid and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to give 1.03g (85% yield) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-octyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 96-98°C.

Analysis for $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{30}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$:			
Calculated	C, 72.69;	H, 9.15;	N, 8.48.
Found	C, 72.48;	H, 9.26;	N, 8.33.

30 Example 52

Preparation of [4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-octyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

A. 5-Hydroxy-2-methyl-1-octyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.
 A solution of 1.03g (3.1 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1-octyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 5 mL of 1M BBr_3 /methylene chloride in 50 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 24 hours, poured into water and 150 mL of ethyl acetate added. The organic layer was separated, washed with NaHCO_3 solution, dried(Na_2SO_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel by eluting with 5% MeOH/methylene chloride to give 316mg (32% yield) of 5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-octyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

40 B. [4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-octyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester.
 5-Hydroxy-2-methyl-1-octyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide (316mg, 1.0 mmol) was reacted with 240mg (1.0 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral and then 0.143 mL(1 mmol) of ethyl 4-bromobutyrate as described in Example 50, Part D. The product was chromatographed on silica gel (eluted with 3% MeOH/methylene chloride) to give 230mg (53% yield) of [4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-octyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester, mp, 80-85°C.

Analysis for $\text{C}_{26}\text{H}_{38}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$:			
Calculated	C, 69.74;	H, 8.90;	N, 6.51.
Found	C, 67.56;	H, 9.01;	N, 5.95.

55 C. [4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-octyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.
 Using the method of Example 1, Part E, 230mg (0.53 mmol) of [4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-octyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester was hydrolyzed with 2 mL of 5N NaOH to give after crystallization from MeOH, 97mg (45% yield) of [4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-octyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid, mp, 164-165°C.

5

Analysis for C ₂₅ H ₃₄ N ₂ O ₄ :			
Calculated	C, 68.63;	H, 8.51;	N, 6.96.
Found	C, 68.40;	H, 8.30;	N, 6.82.

Example 53

10 Preparation of [4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-decyl-2-methyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

A. 1-Decyl-5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide. A mixture of 5 mL of 1M BBr₃/methylene chloride and 0.98g(2.73 mmol) of 1-decyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide in 40 mL of methylene chloride was reacted as described in Example 50, Part C to give 0.81g(60% yield) of crude 1-decyl-5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

15 B. [4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-decyl-2-methyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester.

1-Decyl-5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide (810mg, 3.35 mmol) was reacted with 96mg (2.4 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and then 0.32 mL (2.4 mmol) of ethyl 4-bromobutyrate as described in Example 50, Part D to give a product that was chromatographed on silica gel (eluted with 3% MeOH/methylene chloride) to give 590mg (55% yield) of [4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-decyl-2-methyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester, mp, 93-95°C.

20

25

Analysis for C ₂₇ H ₄₂ N ₂ O ₄ :			
Calculated	C, 70.71;	H, 9.23;	N, 6.11.
Found	C, 70.57;	H, 9.03;	N, 6.17.

30 C. [4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-decyl-2-methyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

A mixture of 590mg (1.3 mmol) of [4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-decyl-2-methyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester and 1.5 mL of 5N NaOH in 20 mL of MeOH was heated to maintain reflux for 2.5 hours, cooled, poured into water and made strongly acidic with 5N HCl. The precipitate was filtered and recrystallized from MeOH. There was obtained 430mg (77% yield) of [4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-decyl-2-methyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid, mp, 163-165°C.

35

Analysis for C ₂₅ H ₃₈ N ₂ O ₄ :			
Calculated	C, 69.74;	H, 8.90;	N, 6.51.
Found	C, 70.63;	H, 8.83;	N, 6.98.

40

Example 54

45 Preparation of [4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-cyclohexyl-2-methyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

A. 1-Cyclohexyl-5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide. A mixture of 2 mL of 1M BBr₃/methylene chloride and 330mg (1.05 mmol) of 1-cyclohexyl-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide in 25 mL of methylene chloride was reacted as described in Example 50, Part C to give 300mg of crude 1-cyclohexyl-5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

50 Analysis for C₁₈H₂₄N₂O₂:

Calculated C, 71.97; H, 8.05; N, 9.33.
 Found C, 69.14; H, 7.60; N, 8.69.

55 B. [4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-cyclohexyl-2-methyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester.

1-Cyclohexyl-5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide (300mg, 1.0 mmol) was reacted with 40mg (1.0 mmol) 60% NaH/mineral oil and then 0.143 mL (1.0 mmol) of ethyl 4-bromobutyrate as described in Example 50, Part D to give a product that was chromatographed on silica gel (eluted with 2%

MeOH/m thyl ne chloride) to give 190mg (46% yield) of [4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-cyclohexyl-2-methyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester, mp, 92-94°C.

Analysis for C ₂₄ H ₃₄ N ₂ O ₄ :			
Calculated	C, 69.54;	H, 8.27;	N, 6.76.
Found	C, 69.72;	H, 8.33;	N, 6.70.

10 C. [4-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-cyclohexyl-2-methyl-1-H-Indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.
A mixture of 190mg (0.46 mmol) of [4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-decyl-2-methyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester and 2 mL of 5N NaOH in 20 mL of MeOH was heated to maintain reflux for 2.5 hours, cooled, poured into water and made strongly acidic with 5N HCl. The precipitate was filtered and recrystallized from MeOH. There was obtained 50mg (28% yield) of [4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-cyclohexyl-2-methyl-1-H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid. mp, 212-214°C.

15 Analysis for C₂₂H₃₀N₂O₄:

Calculated C, 68.37; H, 7.82; N, 7.25.
Found C, 68.19; H, 7.54; N, 7.02.

20 Example 55

Preparation of [3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid.

A. 1-[(1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.

25 5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester (988mg, 4 mmol) was added to 160mg (4 mmol) of NaH/mineral oil (previously washed with hexane), the mixture stirred for 0.5 hours and 0.74 mL (4 mmol) of 2-(bromomethyl)biphenyl added. After 2 hours, water was added and the mixture extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with 20% EtOAc/hexane to give 1.18g (72% yield) of 1-[(1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester as an oil.

B. 1-[(1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

30 A mixture of 1.18g(2.86 mmol) of 1-[(1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester and 3 mL of hydrazine in 20 mL of ethanol was heated to maintain reflux for 16 hours. After cooling, water was added and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate solution was washed with brine, dried(MgSO₄), and concentrated to give 1.02g of 1-[(1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide. A mixture of 576mg (1.44 mmol) of this material and 300mg of Raney Ni in 20 mL of ethanol was heated to maintain reflux for 3 hours. After cooling the solvent was decanted and the Raney Ni washed twice with methylene chloride. The combined organic solvents were concentrated at reduced pressure and the residue chromatographed on silica gel and eluted with ethyl acetate to give 369mg (67% yield) of 1-[(1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

C. 1-[(1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

35 A solution of 369mg (0.96 mmol) of 1-[(1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 4 mL of 1M BBr/methylene chloride in 20 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 6 hours. The mixture was concentrated at reduced pressure, the residue dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with water, brine and dried (MgSO₄). After concentrating at reduced pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica gel and eluted with EtOAc to give 295mg (85% yield) of 1-[(1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

D. [3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.

40 1-[(1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide (295mg, 0.8 mmol) was added to 32mg (0.8 mmol) of NaH/mineral oil in 10 mL of DMF, stirred 1 hour, 121mg (0.8 mmol) of (3-bromopropyl)phosphonic acid dimethyl ester added and stirring maintained for 5.5 hours. The mixture was diluted with water, extracted with ethyl acetate, the ethyl acetate washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with a gradient, EtOAc→10%MeOH/EtOAc to give 140mg (34% yield) of [3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.

E. [3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phos-

phonic acid.

[3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-ylmethyl]-2-methyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester (130mg, 0.25 mmol) and 0.3 mL (3 mmol) of trimethylsilyl bromide in 2 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 16 hours, 5 mL of MeOH added, stirred 0.75 hours and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from EtOAc/MeCN/HOAc/water to give 41mg (33% yield) of [3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-ylmethyl]-2-methyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid, mp, 200-202°C.

Analysis for C ₂₇ H ₃₉ N ₂ O ₅ P:			
Calculated	C, 65.84;	H, 5.94;	N, 5.69.
Found	C, 65.56;	H, 5.85;	N, 5.74.

15 Example 56

Preparation of 2-Ethyl-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

2-Ethyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (5.05g, 15.7 mmol) and 47 mL of 1M BBr₃ in 100 mL of methylene chloride was reacted as described in Example 56, Part C to give a product that was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with EtOAc to give 3.64g (75% yield) of 2-ethyl-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide as a yellow foam.

Analysis for C ₁₉ H ₂₀ N ₂ O ₂ :			
Calculated	C, 74.00;	H, 6.54;	N, 9.08.
Found	C, 73.55;	H, 6.40;	N, 8.73.

30 Example 57

Preparation of [4-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester.

2-Ethyl-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (308mg, 1 mmol) was reacted with 40mg (1 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and then with 0.15 mL (1 mmol) of ethyl 4-bromobutyrate as described in Example 56, Part D to give a product that was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with 50% EtOAc/hexane to give 231mg (55% yield) of [4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester.

Analysis for C ₂₅ H ₃₀ N ₂ O ₄ :			
Calculated	C, 71.07;	H, 7.16;	N, 6.63.
Found	C, 71.21;	H, 7.24;	N, 6.53.

45 Example 58

Preparation of [4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

A mixture of 200mg (0.5 mmol) of [4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester and 4 mL of 1N NaOH in 10 mL of EtOH was stirred for 1.5 hours, diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc. The aqueous layer was made acidic to pH 5 with 1N HCl, extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with brine and dried (MgSO₄). The solvent was evaporated at reduced pressure, the residue stirred with ether/MeOH and the insoluble material filtered to give 120mg (61% yield) of [4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid, mp, 196-199°C.

EP 0 620 215 A1

Analysis for C ₂₃ H ₂₆ N ₂ O ₄ :			
Calculated	C, 70.03;	H, 6.64;	N, 7.10.
Found	C, 69.96;	H, 6.78;	N, 6.85.

5

Example 59

10 Preparation of 2-Ethyl-5-(4-hydrazino-4-oxobutoxy)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A mixture of 211mg (0.05 mmol) of [4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester and 1 mL of hydrazine in 5 mL of ethanol was heated to maintain reflux for 5 hours. The mixture was diluted with water, extracted with ethyl acetate, the ethyl acetate washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was stirred with MeOH and the insoluble material filtered to give 177mg (87% yield) of 2-ethyl-5-(4-hydrazino-4-oxobutoxy)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 176-179°C.

20

Analysis for C ₂₃ H ₂₈ N ₄ O ₃ :			
Calculated	C, 67.63;	H, 6.91;	N, 13.72.
Found	C, 67.58;	H, 7.01;	N, 13.95.

25

Example 60

Preparation of 5-(4-Amino-4-oxobutoxy)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A mixture of 150mg (0.37 mmol) of 2-ethyl-5-(4-hydrazino-4-oxobutoxy)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 200mg of Raney Ni in 15 mL of ethanol was heated to maintain reflux for 2 hours. After cooling, the EtOH was poured off and the Raney Ni washed twice with methylene chloride. The combined washes were filtered, concentrated at reduced pressure and the residue chromatographed on silica eluting with EtOAc, then 10% MeOH/EtOAc to give 69mg (47% yield) of 5-(4-amino-4-oxobutoxy)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp 176-179°C.

35

Analysis for C ₂₃ H ₂₇ N ₃ O ₃ :			
Calculated	C, 70.20;	H, 6.92;	N, 10.68.
Found	C, 69.92;	H, 7.13;	N, 10.84.

40

Example 61

Preparation of [3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.

5-Hydroxy-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (308mg, 1.0 mmol) was added to 40mg(1.0 mmol) of NaH/mineral oil (washed with hexanes) in 4 mL of DMF, stirred 0.5 hours, 196mg (0.85 mmol) of (3-bromopropyl)phosphonic acid dimethyl ester added and stirring maintained for 6.5 hours. The mixture was diluted with water, extracted with ethyl acetate, the ethyl acetate washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with EtOAc, 5% MeOH/EtOAc, then 10% MeOH/EtOAc to give 289mg (59% yield) of [3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.

55

Analysis for C ₂₄ H ₃₁ N ₂ O ₅ P:			
Calculated	C, 62.89;	H, 6.82;	N, 6.11.
Found	C, 62.72;	H, 6.97;	N, 6.29.

Example 62

Preparation of [3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid.

5 [3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester (150mg, 0.33 mmol) and 0.35 mL (2.6 mmol) of trimethylsilyl bromide in 2 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 18 hours, 5 mL of MeOH added, stirred 1.0 hour and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from EtOAc/MeCN/HOAc/water to give 138mg (97% yield) of [3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid, mp. 194-196°C.

10

Analysis for $C_{22}H_{27}N_2O_5P$:			
Calculated	C, 61.39;	H, 8.32;	N, 6.51.
Found	C, 61.35;	H, 8.38;	N, 6.35.

15

Example 63

20 Preparation of [3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid monomethyl ester.

A mixture of 162mg (0.35 mmol) of [3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester and 5 mL of 1N NaOH in 10 mL of MeOH was heated to maintain reflux for 5 hours, diluted with water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer was made acidic to pH 2-3 with 1N HCl and extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate solution was washed with brine, dried ($MgSO_4$) and concentrated at reduced pressure to give 120mg (77% yield) of [3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid monomethyl ester.

25

Analysis for $C_{23}H_{29}N_2O_5P$:			
Calculated	C, 62.15;	H, 6.58;	N, 6.30.
Found	C, 63.15;	H, 6.45;	N, 4.81.

35

Example 64

Preparation of [3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid.

A. 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.
40 2-Ethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester (1.82g, 7.4 mmol) was added to 296mg (7.4 mmol) of NaH/mineral oil (previously washed with hexane), the mixture stirred for 0.5 hours and 0.93 mL (7.4 mmol) of 3-chlorobenzyl chloride added. After 21 hours, water was added and the mixture extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate was washed with brine, dried ($MgSO_4$) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with 20% EtOAc/hexane to give 2.13g (75% yield) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester as an oil.

45

Analysis for $C_{22}H_{24}ClNO_3$:			
Calculated	C, 68.48;	H, 6.27;	N, 6.63.
Found	C, 68.25;	H, 6.52;	N, 3.45.

50

B. 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide.

A mixture of 1.93g (5 mmol) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester and 5 mL of hydrazine in 20 mL of ethanol was heated to maintain reflux for 19 hours. After cooling, water was added and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate solution was washed with brine, dried ($MgSO_4$), and concentrated to give 1.144g (62% yield) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide.

Analysis for $C_{20}H_{22}ClN_3O_2$:			
Calculated	C, 64.60;	H, 5.96;	N, 11.30.
Found	C, 64.37;	H, 6.13;	N, 11.18.

5

C. 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A mixture of 340mg (0.92 mmol) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide and 200mg of Raney Ni in 20 mL of ethanol was heated to maintain reflux for 2.5 hours. After cooling the solvent was decanted and the Raney Ni washed twice with methylene chloride. The combined organic solvents were filtered, concentrated at reduced pressure and the residue chromatographed on silica gel eluting with ethyl acetate to give 244mg (74% yield) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

D. 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-5-hydroxy-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A solution of 226mg (0.63 mmol) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 2.5 mL of 1M BBr_3 /methylene chloride in 15 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 6 hours. The mixture was concentrated at reduced pressure, the residue dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with water, brine and dried($MgSO_4$). After concentrating at reduced pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica gel and eluted with $EtOAc$ to give 174mg (81% yield) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-5-hydroxy-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

E. [3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.

1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-5-hydroxy-1H-indole-3-acetamide (170mg, 0.5 mmol) was added to 20mg (0.5 mmol) of NaH /mineral oil in 10 mL of DMF, stirred 1 hour, 121mg (0.8 mmol) of (3-bromopropyl)phosphonic acid dimethyl ester added and stirring maintained for 4 hours. The mixture was diluted with water, extracted with ethyl acetate, the ethyl acetate washed with brine, dried ($MgSO_4$) and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with $EtOAc$ then 10% $MeOH/EtOAc$ to give 99mg (40% yield) of [3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.

F. [3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid.

[3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester (99mg, 0.2 mmol) and 0.21 mL (1.6 mmol) of trimethylsilyl bromide in 2 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 16 hours, 5 mL of $MeOH$ added, stirred 0.75 hours and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from $EtOAc/MeCN/HOAc$ /water to give 60mg(65% yield) of [3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid, mp, 203-205°C.

40

Analysis for $C_{22}H_{28}ClN_2O_3O_5P$:			
Calculated	C, 56.84;	H, 5.64;	N, 6.03.
Found	C, 56.80;	H, 5.68;	N, 5.96.

45

Example 65

Preparation of 4-(2-Hydrazino-2-oxoethoxy)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A mixture of 484mg (1.3 mmol) of 2-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester (Example 39) and 2 mL of hydrazine in 10 mL of ethanol was heated to maintain reflux for 16 hours, 10 mL of ethanol added, heated an additional 4 hours and cooled. Ethyl acetate and water were added and the insoluble material filtered. The ethyl acetate solution was separated, washed with brine, dried ($MgSO_4$) and concentrated. The residue was combined with the precipitate above to give 435mg (91% yield) of 4-(2-hydrazino-2-oxoethoxy)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 207-210°C.

55

5

Analysis for C₂₀H₂₂N₄O₃:

Calculated	C, 65.56;	H, 6.05;	N, 15.29.
Found	C, 65.57;	H, 6.14;	N, 15.40.

Example 66

10 Preparation of 4-(2-Amino-2-oxoethoxy)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A mixture of 230mg (0.63 mmol) of 4-(2-hydrazino-2-oxoethoxy)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 300mg of Raney Ni in 40 mL of ethanol was heated to maintain reflux for 4 hours. The mixture was cooled, the EtOH poured off the catalyst, and the catalyst washed twice with methylene chloride. The combined solvents were filtered, concentrated and the residue chromatographed on silica gel and on eluting with 10% MeOH/EtOAc, 25mg (11% yield) of 4-(2-amino-2-oxoethoxy)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide were obtained. This material melted at 190-207°C.

20

Analysis for C₂₀H₂₁N₃O₃:

Calculated	C, 68.36;	H, 6.02;	N, 11.96.
Found	C, 68.08;	H, 6.55;	N, 13.28.

25

Example 67

Preparation of [[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]methyl]phosphonic acid diethyl ester.

4-Hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (294mg, 1 mmol) was added to 40mg (1 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil (previously washed with hexane) in 2 mL of DMF, stirred 0.33 hours, 1.1g (4 mmol) of iodomethylphosphonic acid diethyl ester added, stirred 72 hours, 1.1g (4 mmol) of iodomethylphosphonic acid diethyl ester added and stirring continued 24 hours. The mixture was diluted with water, extracted with ethyl acetate, the ethyl acetate washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with ethyl acetate, then 10% MeOH/EtOAc to give 206mg (46% yield) of [[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]methyl]phosphonic acid diethyl ester.

Example 68

40 Preparation of [[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]methyl]phosphonic acid.

[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]methyl]phosphonic acid diethyl ester (206mg, 0.46 mmol) and 0.49 mL (3.7 mmol) of trimethylsilyl bromide in 2 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 16 hours, 5 mL of MeOH added, stirred 1.0 hour and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from EtOAc/MeCN/HOAc/water to give 52mg (29% yield) of [[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]methyl]phosphonic acid, mp, 195-198°C.

50

Analysis for C₁₉H₂₁ClN₂O₆P:

Calculated	C, 58.76;	H, 5.45;	N, 7.21.
Found	C, 58.52;	H, 5.32;	N, 7.26.

55

Example 69

Preparation of 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A. 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester. Using the procedure described in Example 65, Part A. 741mg (3 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid

ethyl ester (Example 35, Part C) was reacted with 120mg (3 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and then 0.38 mL (3 mmol) of 3-chlorobenzyl chloride to give a product that chromatographed on silica gel (eluted with 20% EtOAc/hexane) to give 790mg (70% yield) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester, mp, 113-115°C.

5 **Analysis for $C_{21}H_{22}ClNO_3$:**

Calculated	C, 67.83; H, 5.96; N, 3.77.
10 Found	C, 70.39; H, 6.31; N, 3.82.

B. 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide.

A mixture of 780mg (2 mmol) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester and 2 mL of hydrazine in 10 mL of ethanol was heated to maintain reflux for 16 hours, poured into ethyl acetate/water and the ethyl acetate separated, washed with brine and dried ($MgSO_4$). After concentrating, the residue was stirred with MeOH and the insoluble material filtered to give 698mg (98% yield) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide, mp, 160-162°C.

20 **Analysis for $C_{19}H_{20}ClN_3O_2$:**

Calculated	C, 63.77;	H, 5.63;	N, 11.74.
Found	C, 63.97;	H, 5.70;	N, 11.56.

25 C. 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A mixture of 675mg (1.9 mmol) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide and 500mg of Raney Ni in 25 mL of ethanol was heated to maintain reflux for 3.5 hours and cooled to room temperature. The ethanol was decanted and the Raney Ni washed twice with methylene chloride. The combined solvents were filtered, concentrated at reduced pressure and the residue chromatographed on silica gel (eluted with EtOAc) to give 503mg (77% yield) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 171-173°C.

35 **Analysis for $C_{19}H_{19}ClN_2O_2$:**

Calculated	C, 66.57;	H, 5.59;	N, 8.17.
Found	C, 66.79;	H, 5.73;	N, 8.17.

40 **Example 70**

Preparation of 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A solution of 483mg (1.4 mmol) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 5.6 mL of 1M Br_2 /methylene chloride in 20 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 5 hours, 2 mL of 1M Br_2 /methylene chloride added and stirred 18 hours. The mixture was poured into water, extracted with ethyl acetate, the ethyl acetate solution washed with brine, dried ($MgSO_4$) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel and eluted using a gradient, 50% EtOAc/hexane → EtOAc, to give 155mg of starting material, 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide, and 220mg (48% yield) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 173-177°C.

55 **Analysis for $C_{18}H_{17}ClN_2O_2$:**

Calculated	C, 65.75;	H, 5.21;	N, 8.52.
Found	C, 65.93;	H, 5.32;	N, 8.48.

Example 71

Preparation of [(3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-methyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid ethyl ester.

5 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-4-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3 acetamide (206mg, 0.63 mmol) was added to 25mg (0.63 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil (previously washed with hexane) in 6 mL of DMF, stirred 0.5 hours, 0.08 mL (0.63 mmol) of methyl 2-bromoacetate added and stirred 2.5 hours. The mixture was diluted with water, extracted with ethyl acetate, the ethyl acetate washed with brine, dried (MgS_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was stirred with MeOH and the insoluble material filtered to give 184mg (73% yield) of 10 [(3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-methyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid ethyl ester, mp, 180-183°C.

Analysis for $\text{C}_{21}\text{H}_{21}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_4$:			
Calculated	C, 62.92;	H, 5.28;	N, 6.99.
Found	C, 63.06;	H, 5.29;	N, 6.93.

Example 72

Preparation of [(3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-methyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]methyl]acetic acid sodium salt.

25 A mixture of 155mg (0.39 mmol) of [(3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-methyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid ethyl ester and 4 mL of 1N NaOH in 10 mL of ethanol was heated 0.5 hours, allowed to cool and the precipitate filtered to give 140mg (88% yield) of [(3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-methyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid sodium salt, mp, >250°C.

Analysis for $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{15}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_4\text{Na}$:			
Calculated	C, 58.76;	H, 4.44;	N, 6.85.
Found	C, 59.01;	H, 4.55;	N, 6.75.

Example 73

Preparation of [(3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-ylmethyl]-2-methyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid sodium salt.

40 A. 1-[(1,1'-Biphenyl)-2-ylmethyl]-4-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.
5-Methoxy-2-methyl-1H-Indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester (1g, 4 mmol) was added to 160mg (4 mmol) of NaH/mineral oil (previously washed with hexane), the mixture stirred for 1.0 hours and 0.13 mL (4 mmol) of 2-(bromomethyl)biphenyl added. After 3 hours, water was added and the mixture extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate was washed with brine, dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with 20% EtOAc/hexane to give 1.18g (71% yield) of 1-[(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-ylmethyl]-4-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester as an oil.
B. 1-[(1,1'-Biphenyl)-2-ylmethyl]-4-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide. A mixture of 1.18g (2.9 mmol) of 1-[(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-ylmethyl]-4-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester and 3 mL of hydrazine in 20 mL of ethanol was heated to maintain reflux for 15 hours. After cooling, water was added and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate solution was washed with brine, dried (MgSO_4), and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel (eluted with EtOAc and then 10% MeOH/EtOAc) to give 846mg (58% yield) of 1-[(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-ylmethyl]-4-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide, mp, 148-150°C.

5

Analysis for C ₂₅ H ₂₅ N ₃ O ₂ :			
Calculated	C, 75.16;	H, 6.31;	N, 10.52.
Found	C, 75.14;	H, 6.40;	N, 10.63.

10

C. 1-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-4-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A mixture of 576mg (1.44 mmol) of this material and 300mg of Raney Ni in 20 mL of ethanol was heated to maintain reflux for 3 hours. After cooling the solvent was decanted and the Raney Ni washed twice with methylene chloride. The combined organic solvents were filtered and concentrated at reduced pressure and the residue was redissolved in EtOAc and washed with water. After drying (MgSO₄), the ethyl acetate was removed at reduced pressure and the residue was 437mg (71% yield) of 1-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-4-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 173-175°C.

15

Analysis for C ₂₅ H ₂₄ N ₂ O ₂ :			
Calculated	C, 78.10;	H, 6.29;	N, 7.29.
Found	C, 78.94;	H, 6.27;	N, 7.35.

20

D. 1-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-4-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A solution of 430mg (1.1 mmol) of 1-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-4-methoxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 4.4 mL of 1M BBr₃/methylene chloride in 10 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 5.5 hours. The mixture was concentrated at reduced pressure, the residue dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with water, brine and dried (MgSO₄). After concentrating at reduced pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica gel and eluted with EtOAc to give 400mg (98% yield) of 1-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-4-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

25

E. [[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester. 1-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-4-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indole-3-acetamide (400mg, 1.08 mmol) was added to 43mg (1.08 mmol) of NaH/mineral oil in 5 mL of DMF, stirred 1 hour, 0.1 mL (1.08 mmol) of methyl 2-bromoacetate added and stirring maintained for 19 hours. The mixture was diluted with water, extracted with ethyl acetate, the ethyl acetate washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with 50% EtOAc/hexane to give 319mg (67% yield) of [[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester.

30

F. [[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid sodium salt.

35

[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester (319mg, 0.72 mmol) and 5 mL of 1N NaOH in 15 mL of MeOH was heated to maintain reflux for 0.5 hours, added to ethyl acetate/water and the insoluble material filtered to give 244mg (75% yield) of [[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylmethyl)-2-methyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid sodium salt, mp, >250°C.

40

Analysis for C ₂₆ H ₂₃ N ₂ O ₄ Na:			
Calculated	C, 69.35;	H, 5.15;	N, 6.22.
Found	C, 69.10;	H, 5.38;	N, 5.94.

45

Example 74

50

Preparation of [[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid.

A. N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-3-methoxy-2-methylaniline.

55

A solution of 44.4g (344 mmol) of 3-methoxy-2-methylaniline and 75g (344 mmol) of di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate in 400 mL of THF was heated to maintain reflux for 4 hours. After concentrating at reduced pressure, the residue was taken up in ethyl acetate, washed with 1N citric acid, water and dried (MgSO₄). After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the residue was crystallized from hexane to give 64.5g (84% yield) of N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-3-methoxy-2-methylaniline, mp, 56-57°C.

5

Analysis for C ₁₃ H ₁₉ NO ₃ :			
Calculated	C, 65.80;	H, 8.07;	N, 5.90.
Found	C, 63.32;	H, 7.83;	N, 5.56.

B. 2-Ethyl-4-methoxy-1H-indole.

A solution of 140 mL (0.18 mol) of 1.3M *sec*-butyl lithium in cyclohexane was added slowly to N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-3-methoxy-2-methylaniline (21.3g, 0.09 mol) in 250 mL of THF keeping the temperature below -40°C with a dry ice-ethanol bath. The bath was removed and the temperature allowed to rise to 0°C and then the bath replaced. After the temperature had cooled to -60°C, 18.5g (0.18 mol) of N-methoxy-N-methylpropanamide in an equal volume of THF was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred 5 minutes, the cooling bath removed and stirred an additional 18 hours. It was then poured into a mixture of 300 mL of ether and 400 mL of 0.5N HCl. The organic layer was separated, washed with water, brine, dried over MgSO₄, and concentrated at reduced pressure to give 25.5g of a crude of 1-[2-(*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino)-6-methoxyphenyl]-2-butanone. This material was dissolved in 250 mL of methylene chloride and 50 mL of trifluoroacetic acid and stirred for a total of 17 hours. The mixture was concentrated at reduced pressure and ethyl acetate and water added to the remaining oil. The ethyl acetate was separated, washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed three times on silica eluting with 20% EtOAc/hexane to give 13.9g of 2-ethyl-4-methoxy-1H-indole.

25

Analyses for C ₁₁ H ₁₃ NO:			
Calculated	C, 75.40;	H, 7.48;	N, 7.99.
Found	C, 74.41;	H, 7.64;	N, 7.97.

C. 2-Ethyl-4-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole.

2-Ethyl-4-methoxy-1H-indole (4.2g, 24 mmol) was dissolved in 30 mL of DMF and 960mg (24 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil was added. After 1.5 hours, 2.9 mL (24 mmol) of benzyl bromide was added. After 4 hours, the mixture was diluted with water and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The combined ethyl acetate was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel and eluted with 20% EtOAc/hexane to give 3.1g (49% yield) of 2-ethyl-4-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole.

35

D. 2-Ethyl-4-methoxy-alpha-oxo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

Oxalyl chloride (0.87 mL, 10 mmol) was added to 2.6g (9.8 mmol) of 2-ethyl-4-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole in 25 mL of methylene chloride, the mixture stirred for 3 hours and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was redissolved in 25 mL of methylene chloride, anhydrous ammonia bubbled in for 0.25 hours and the mixture concentrated. The residue was stirred with ethyl acetate/water and the insoluble material filtered. The ethyl acetate from the filtrate was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. The residue was washed with ether and combined with the filtered material above to give 1.19g (36% yield) of 2-ethyl-4-methoxy-alpha-oxo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 193-199°C.

45

Analysis for C ₂₀ H ₂₀ N ₂ O ₃ :			
Calculated	C, 71.41;	H, 5.99;	N, 8.33.
Found	C, 66.22;	H, 6.16;	N, 10.42.

50

E. 2-Ethyl-4-methoxy-alpha-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A mixture of 1g(3 mmol) of 2-ethyl-4-methoxy-alpha-oxo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 142mg (3.75 mmol) of sodium borohydride and 100 mL of ethanol was stirred for 20 hours, and evaporated at reduced pressure. The residue was taken up in ethyl acetate and water, the ethyl acetate separated and washed with brine and dried (MgSO₄). The solution was concentrated at reduced pressure and the residue stirred with ether. The insoluble material was filtered to give 893mg (88%) of 2-ethyl-4-methoxy-alpha-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 160-162°C.

55

Analysis for $C_{20}H_{22}N_2O_3$:			
Calculated	C, 70.99;	H, 6.55;	N, 8.28.
Found	C, 70.76;	H, 6.55;	N, 8.11.

5

F. 2-Ethyl-4-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A solution of 875mg (2.6 mmol) of 2-ethyl-4-methoxy-alphahydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 0.51 mL (3.23 mmol) of triethylsilane in 10 mL of trifluoroacetic acid was stirred for 16 hours and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was taken up in ethyl acetate and water, the ethyl acetate separated, washed with brine and dried ($MgSO_4$). The residue was chromatographed on silica gel and eluted first with 50% ethyl acetate/hexane and then ethyl acetate to give 521mg (62% yield) of 2-ethyl-4-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 152-154°C.

10

15

Analysis for $C_{20}H_{22}N_2O_2$:			
Calculated	C, 74.51;	H, 6.88;	N, 8.69.
Found	C, 74.24;	H, 6.90;	N, 8.72.

20

G. 2-Ethyl-4-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

2-Ethyl-4-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (483mg, 1.5 mmol) and 6 mL of BBr₃ were reacted as described in Example 58, Part C, to give after chromatography on silica gel (eluted with ethyl acetate) 156mg (34% yield) of 2-ethyl-4-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

25

Analysis for $C_{19}H_{20}N_2O_2$:			
Calculated	C, 74.00;	H, 6.54;	N, 9.08.
Found	C, 69.23;	H, 6.09;	N, 8.24.

30

H. 2-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester.

2-Ethyl-4-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (135mg, 0.44 mmol) was added to 17.6mg (0.44 mmol) of NaH/mineral oil (washed with hexanes) in 5 mL of DMF, stirred 0.5 hour, 0.04 mL (0.44 mmol) of methyl 2-bromoacetate added and stirring maintained for 5 hours. The mixture was diluted with water, extracted with ethyl acetate. Some material was insoluble and was filtered. The ethyl acetate was washed with brine, dried ($MgSO_4$) and concentrated. The residue was combined with the filtered material to give 119mg (71% yield) of 2-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester.

35

Analysis for $C_{22}H_{24}N_2O_4$:			
Calculated	C, 69.46;	H, 6.36;	N, 7.36.
Found	C, 69.65;	H, 6.41;	N, 7.35.

40

I. 2-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid.

A mixture of 100mg (0.26 mmol) of 2-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester and 2 mL of 1N NaOH in 6 mL of MeOH was heated to dissolve all materials and then stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Water and ethyl acetate were added and the aqueous layer separated, made acidic to pH 3 with 1N HCl and ethyl acetate added. The insoluble material was filtered. The ethyl acetate solution was washed with brine, dried ($MgSO_4$), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was combined with the filtered material above to give 90mg (95% yield) of 2-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid, mp, 220-222°C.

Analysis: Calc'd for $C_{21}H_{22}N_2O_4$: C, 68.84; H, 6.05; N, 7.65. Found: C, 67.52; H, 5.67; N, 8.46.

45

Example 75

Preparation of 2-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid.

5 A. 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-4-methoxy-1H-indole 2-Ethyl-4-methoxy-1H-indole (7.65g, 44 mmol) was dissolved in 50 mL of DMF and 1.76g (44 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil was added. After 0.75 hours, 5.6 mL (24 mmol) of 3-chlorobenzyl chloride was added. After 18 hours, the mixture was diluted with water and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The combined ethyl acetate was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel and eluted with 20% EtOAc/hexane to give 1.61g (12% yield) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-4-methoxy-1H-indole.

10 B. 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-4-methoxy-alpha-oxo 1H-indole-3-acetamide. Oxalyl chloride (0.5 mL, 5.3 mmol) was reacted with 1.6g (5.3 mmol) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-4-methoxy-1H-indole in 20 mL of methylene chloride and ammonia as described in Example 75, Part C and was worked up with the addition of chromatography on silica gel(eluting with ethyl acetate) to give 1.47g(75% yield) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-4-methoxy-alpha-oxo-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 124-129°C.

Analysis for C ₂₀ H ₁₉ ClN ₂ O ₃ :			
Calculated	C, 64.78;	H, 5.16;	N, 7.55.
Found	C, 64.72;	H, 5.16;	N, 7.66.

20 C. 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-4-methoxy-alphahydroxy-1H-indole-3-acetamide. Using the procedure described in Example 75, Part E, 750mg (2 mmol) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-4-methoxy-alpha-oxo-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 95mg (2.5 mmol) of sodium borohydride in 50 mL of ethanol were reacted to give after washing with methylene chloride 290mg (39%) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-4-methoxy-alpha-hydroxy-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 134-136°C.

Analysis for C ₂₀ H ₂₁ ClN ₂ O ₃ :			
Calculated	C, 64.43;	H, 5.68;	N, 7.51.
Found	C, 65.61;	H, 5.81;	N, 11.24.

30 D. 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-4-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetamide. By the method in Example 75, Part F, 280mg (0.75 mmol) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-4-methoxy-alpha-hydroxy-1H-indole-3-acetamide was reduced with 0.12 mL (0.75 mmol) of triethylsilane in 2 mL of trifluoroacetic acid to give by chromatography on silica gel(eluted ethyl acetate) 125mg (48% yield) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-4-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

35 E. 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-4-hydroxy-1H-indole-3-acetamide. 1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-4-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetamide. (123mg, 0.35 mmol) and 1.4 mL of BBr₃ were reacted as described in Example 56, Part C, to give after chromatography on silica gel(eluted with ethyl acetate) 156mg (34% yield) of 1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-4-hydroxy-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

40 F. [[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester. (1-[(3-Chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-4-hydroxy-1H-indole-3-acetamide (91mg, 0.3 mmol) was reacted with 12mg (0.3 mmol) of NaH/mineral oil (washed with hexanes) in 10 mL of DMF and then 0.03 mL (0.3 mmol) of methyl 2-bromoacetate as described in Example 75, Part H, to give after chromatography on silica gel (eluted with ethyl acetate) 80mg (71% yield) of 2-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester.

45 G. [[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid. A mixture of 80mg (0.19 mmol) of [[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester and 1 mL of 1N NaOH in 3 mL of MeOH was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. Water and ethyl acetate were added and the aqueous layer separated, made acidic to pH 3 with 1N HCl. The insoluble material was filtered and the ethyl acetate solution was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was stirred with ethyl acetate and filtered and this material combined with the filtered material above to give 61mg(80% yield) of [[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid, mp, 216-217°C.

5

Analysis for C ₂₁ H ₂₁ ClN ₂ O ₄ :			
Calculated	C, 62.92;	H, 5.28;	N, 6.99.
Found	C, 63.09;	H, 5.41;	N, 6.99.

Example 76

10 Preparation of 2-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid.

A. 4-Methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-Indole.

4-Methoxy-1H-indole (1.5g, 10 mmol) was dissolved in 20 mL of DMF and 400mg (10 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil was added. After 1 hour, 1.2 mL (10 mmol) of benzyl bromide was added. After 3.5 hours, the mixture was diluted with water and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The combined ethyl acetate was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel and eluted with 20% EtOAc/hexane to give 1.77g (75% yield) of 4-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole.

15

20

Analysis for C ₁₈ H ₁₅ NO:			
Calculated	C, 81.98;	H, 6.37;	N, 5.90.
Found	C, 80.71;	H, 6.24;	N, 6.09.

25

B. 4-Methoxy-alpha-oxo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

Oxalyl chloride (0.63 mL, 7.2 mmol) was added to 1.7g (7.2 mmol) of 4-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole in 20 mL of methylene chloride, the mixture stirred for 1 hour and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was redissolved in 25 mL of methylene chloride, anhydrous ammonia bubbled in for 0.25 hours and the mixture concentrated. The residue was stirred with ethyl acetate and the insoluble material filtered to give a mixture of 1.42g of 2-ethyl-4-methox-alpha-oxo-1-phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide and ammonium chloride.

30

C. 4-Methoxy-alpha-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A mixture of 1.4g (4.5 mmol) of 4-methoxy-alpha-oxo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 213mg (5.6 mmol) of sodium borohydride and 50 mL of ethanol was stirred for 20 hours, 213mg (5.6 mmol) of sodium borohydride added and stirred an additional 20 hours and the mixture filtered and evaporated at reduced pressure. The residue was stirred with ethyl acetate and water and the insoluble material was filtered to give 600mg (43%) of 4-methoxy-alpha-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 179-182°C.

35

40

Analysis for C ₁₈ H ₁₈ N ₂ O ₃ :			
Calculated	C, 69.66;	H, 5.85;	N, 9.03.
Found	C, 69.52;	H, 5.76;	N, 8.86.

45

D. 4-Methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A solution of 600mg (1.9 mmol) of 4-methoxy-alpha-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 0.32 mL (2 mmol) of triethylsilane in 5 mL of trifluoroacetic acid was stirred for 16 hours and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was taken up in ethyl acetate and water, the ethyl acetate separated, washed with brine and dried (MgSO₄). The residue was chromatographed on silica gel and eluted first with 50% ethyl acetate/hexane and then ethyl acetate to give after crystallizing from MeOH 262mg (47% yield) of 4-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 184-187°C.

50

55

Analysis for C ₁₈ H ₁₈ N ₂ O ₂ :			
Calculated	C, 73.45;	H, 6.16;	N, 9.52.
Found	C, 77.20;	H, 6.80;	N, 9.13.

E. 4-Hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

4-Methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (236mg, 0.8 mmol) and 3.2 mL of BBr_3 were reacted as described in Example 56, Part C, to give after chromatography on silica gel (eluted with 50% ethyl acetate/hexane) 78mg (35% yield) of 4-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

F. 2-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester.

2-Ethyl-4-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (135mg, 0.44 mmol) was added to 17.6mg (0.44 mmol) of NaH/mineral oil (washed with hexanes) in 5 mL of DMF, stirred 1.5 hours, 0.04 mL (0.44 mmol) of methyl 2-bromoacetate added and stirring maintained for 3 hours. The mixture was diluted with water, extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate was washed with brine, dried ($MgSO_4$) and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with 2% MeOH/ethyl acetate to give 34mg (34% yield) of 2-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester.

G. 2-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid.

A mixture of 100mg (0.26 mmol) of 2-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid methyl ester and 2 mL of 1N NaOH in 6 mL of MeOH was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. Water and ethyl acetate were added and the aqueous layer separated, made acidic to pH 3 with 1N HCl and ethyl acetate added. The ethyl acetate solution was washed with brine, dried ($MgSO_4$), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was stirred with methylene chloride and filtered to give 17mg (56% yield) of 2-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid, mp, 207-208°C.

Analysis for $C_{19}H_{18}N_2O_4$:			
Calculated	C, 67.45;	H, 5.36;	N, 8.28.
Found	C, 67.84;	H, 5.42;	N, 8.05.

25

Example 77

2-Cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A. 1-[2-(tert-Butoxycarbonylamino)-5-methoxyphenyl]-2-butanoate.

A solution of 1.3M *sec*-butyl lithium/cyclohexane (100 mL, 0.13 mol) was added slowly to 15.17g (0.065 mol) of N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-methoxy-2-methylaniline in 230 mL of THF while keeping the temperature below -40°C with a dry ice-ethanol bath. The bath was removed and the temperature allowed to rise to -20°C and then the bath was replaced. After the temperature had cooled to -55°C, 8.4g (0.065 mol) of N-methoxy-N-methylcyclopropylcarboxamide in 20 mL of THF was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred 1 hour, the cooling bath removed and stirred an additional 2 hours. It was then poured into 500 mL of water. The organic layer was separated, washed with water, dried over Na_2SO_4 and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from hexane to give 15.22g (77% yield) of [2-(*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino)-5-methoxyphenyl] cyclopropyl ketone, melting at 96-97°C.

Analyses for $C_{17}H_{23}NO_4$:			
Calculated	C, 66.86;	H, 7.59;	N, 4.59.
Found	C, 66.67;	H, 7.39;	N, 4.45.

45

B. 2-Cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole.

[2-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino)-5-methoxyphenyl] cyclopropyl ketone (13g, 43 mmol) in 250 mL of CH_2Cl_2 and 25 mL of trifluoroacetic acid was stirred for 4 hours, washed with water, $NaHCO_3$ solution, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica (eluted with a gradient, toluene → 20% EtOAc/hexane) to give 4.15g (49% yield) of 2-cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole as an oil.

Analyses for $C_{12}H_{15}NO$:			
Calculated	C, 76.98;	H, 6.99;	N, 7.48.
Found	C, 74.48;	H, 6.73;	N, 7.55.

C. 2-Cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester.

As in Example 1, Part C, 4.46g (0.024 mole) of 2-cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole was treated with 15 mL (0.024 mol) of a 1.6M solution of *n*-butyl lithium in hexane, 24 mL (0.024 mol) of a 1M solution of $ZnCl_2$ in ether, and 12.27 mL (0.024 mol) of methyl 2-bromoacetate to give after chromatography on silica gel (5% EtOAc/toluene \rightarrow 15% EtOAc/toluene) 3.81g (61%) of 2-cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester as an oil.

Analyses for $C_{15}H_{17}NO_3$:			
Calculated	C, 69.48;	H, 6.61;	N, 5.40.
Found	C, 65.59;	H, 6.71;	N, 4.85.

D. 2-Cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester.

A solution of 3.8g (146 mmol) of 2-cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester in 50 mL of DMF was treated with 0.59g (0.146 mol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil, stirred 0.5 hour, and 1.69 mL (146 mmol) of benzyl chloride added. After 20 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with water, extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution was washed four times with water and dried over Na_2SO_4 . After concentrating at reduced pressure, the product was purified by chromatography on silica, eluting with a gradient, 5% EtOAc/toluene \rightarrow 15% EtOAc/toluene, to give 2.05g (40% yield) of 2-cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester as an oil.

Analyses for $C_{22}H_{23}NO_3$:			
Calculated	C, 75.62;	H, 6.63;	N, 4.01.
Found	C, 75.42;	H, 6.68;	N, 4.11.

E. 2-Cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide.

Using the method described in Example 3, Part C, 2.0g (5.73 mmol) of 2-cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester was reacted with 3 mL of hydrazine to give after crystallization from ethanol 1.48g (74% yield) of 2-cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide, 173-174°C.

Analyses for $C_{21}H_{23}N_3O_2$:			
Calculated	C, 72.18;	H, 6.63;	N, 12.02.
Found	C, 71.89;	H, 6.66;	N, 11.95.

F. 2-Cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide. An ethanol solution of 1.0g (2.86 mmol) of 2-cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid hydrazide was reacted with approximately 3g of Raney nickel as described in Example 6, Part C, and the crude product crystallized from ethanol/water to give 0.47g (49% yield) of 2-cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 156-158°C.

Analyses: Calc'd for $C_{21}H_{22}N_2O_2$: C, 75.42; H, 6.63; N, 8.38. Found: C, 75.68; H, 6.79; N, 8.46.

Example 78

Preparation of 2-Cyclopropyl-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A solution of 400mg (1.2 mmol) of 2-cyclopropyl-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 2 mL of 1M BBr_3 /methylene chloride in 130 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 1 hour with an ice-water bath and 3 hours at room temperature. The mixture was poured into water, 200 mL of ethyl acetate added, the organic layer separated, washed with brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). After concentrating at reduced pressure, the residue was crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 300mg (79% yield) of 2-cyclopropyl-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 174-175°C.

5

Analyses for C ₂₀ H ₂₀ N ₂ O ₂ :			
Calculated	C, 74.58;	H, 4.29;	N, 8.74.
Found	C, 75.16;	H, 4.45;	N, 8.72.

Example 79

10 Preparation of [3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-cyclopropyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid.
 A. [3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-cyclopropyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.
 15 2-Cyclopropyl-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (295mg, 0.9 mmol) was dissolved in 10 mL of THF and 40 mL of DMF and 45mg (1.1 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil added. After 0.17 hours, 250mg (1.1 mmol) of (3-bromopropyl)phosphonic acid dimethyl ester was added and stirring maintained for 6.5 hours. The mixture was diluted with water and ethyl acetate, the organic layer separated, washed with water, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution was evaporated at reduced pressure and the residue chromatographed on silica gel eluting with a gradient, 1% MeOH/methylene chloride→5% MeOH/methylene chloride, to give 280mg (71% yield) of [3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-cyclopropyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.
 20 B. [3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-cyclopropyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid. A solution of 280mg (0.6 mmol) of [3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-cyclopropyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester and 1 mL (7.6 mmol) of trimethylsilyl bromide in 20 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 19 hours and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in 10 mL of MeOH, stirred 2 hours and concentrated. This concentrate was crystallized from acetonitrile/ethyl acetate/ether to give 250mg (94% yield) of [3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-cyclopropyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid.

30

Analyses for C ₂₃ H ₂₇ N ₂ O ₅ P:			
Calculated	C, 62.44;	H, 6.15;	N, 6.33.
Found	C, 51.19;	H, 5.37;	N, 5.09.

35

Example 80

Preparation of [3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid.

A. 5-Benzylxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.
 40 As in Example 1, Part C, 80g (0.358mol) of 5-methoxy-1H-indole was treated with 222 mL (0.36 mol) of a 1.6M solution of n-butyl lithium in hexane, 360 ml (0.36 mol) of a 1M solution of ZnCl₂ in ether, and 39.92 mL (0.36 mol) of ethyl 2-bromoacetate to give after chromatography on silica gel (toluene→5% EtOAc/toluene) 30g (27%) of 5-benzylxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester, mp, 57-59°C.

45

Analyses for C ₁₉ H ₁₉ NO ₃ :			
Calculated	C, 73.77;	H, 6.19;	N, 5.43.
Found	C, 73.75;	H, 6.34;	N, 4.50.

50

B. 5-Hydroxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.

5-Benzylxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester (8.1g, 20.3 mmol) was hydrogenated in ethanol using 3g of Raney Ni in 150 mL of ethanol at approximately 40 psi (2.78X10⁵ Pa) of hydrogen. The catalyst was filtered and the filtrate concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with a gradient, 30% ethyl acetate/hexane→50% ethyl acetate/hexane, to give 5.7g (90% yield) of 5-hydroxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.
 55 C. [3-[3-(2-Ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.

5-Hydroxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester (560mg, 1.8 mmol) was dissolved in 25 mL of THF and 75 mL of DMF and 80mg (2.0 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil added. After 0.17 hours, 465mg (2.0 mmol) of (3-bromopropyl)phosphonic acid dimethyl ester was added and stirring maintained for 3.0 hours. The mixture was diluted with water and ethyl acetate, the organic layer separated, washed with water, brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solution was evaporated at reduced pressure and the residue chromatographed on Florisil eluting with a gradient, 1% MeOH/methylene chloride \rightarrow 3% MeOH/methylene chloride, to give 590mg (71% yield) of [3-[3-(2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.

D. [3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester. [3-[3-(2-Ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester (590mg, 1.3 mmol) was dissolved in 40 mL of toluene and 10 mL of 0.67M $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{AlNH}_2$ in benzene/toluene were added. The mixture was heated at 50°C for 3.25 hours and water and 1N HCl added. The mixture was extracted with a large volume of ethyl acetate and the organic layer was washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with a gradient, 1% MeOH/methylene chloride \rightarrow 4% MeOH/methylene chloride, to give 450mg (80% yield) of [3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.

E. [3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid. A solution of 450mg (1.0 mmol) of [3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester and 1.5 mL (11 mmol) of trimethylsilyl bromide in 25 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 16 hours and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in 10 mL of MeOH, stirred 2 hours and concentrated. This concentrate was crystallized from ethyl acetate/methanol to give 325mg (81% yield) of [3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid.

Analyses for $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{23}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5\text{P}$:			
Calculated	C, 59.70;	H, 5.76;	N, 6.96.
Found	C, 58.06;	H, 5.87;	N, 6.41.

30

Example 81

Preparation of [3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]phosphonic acid disodium salt.

A. [3-(2-Ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester. 5-Hydroxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester (730mg, 2.4 mmol) was dissolved in 20 mL of THF and 75 mL of DMF and 115mg (2.8 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil added. After 0.17 hours, 1.1g (4.0 mmol) of (iodomethyl)phosphonic acid dimethyl ester was added and stirring maintained for 5.5 hours. The mixture was diluted with water and ethyl acetate, the organic layer separated, washed with water, brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solution was evaporated at reduced pressure and the residue chromatographed on silica gel eluting with ether to give 150mg (14% yield) of [3-(2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.

B. [3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester. [3-(2-Ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester (150mg, 0.3 mmol) was dissolved in 25 mL of toluene and 10 mL of 0.67M $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{AlNH}_2$ in benzene/toluene were added. The mixture was heated at 50°C for 1.25 hours and water and 1N HCl added. The mixture was extracted with a large volume of ethyl acetate and the organic layer was washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with a gradient, 1% MeOH/methylene chloride \rightarrow 3% MeOH/methylene chloride, to give 120mg (93% yield) of [3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.

C. [3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]phosphonic acid. A solution of 120mg (0.28 mmol) of [3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester and 0.5 mL of trimethylsilyl bromide in 20 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 17 hours and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in 10 mL of MeOH, stirred 2 hours and concentrated. This concentrate was chromatographed on C_{18} reverse phase column eluting with 80% MeOH/(5%HOAc) and then on a HP-20 column eluting with 10% acetonitrile/water and then 50% acetonitrile/water to give 15mg (14% yield) of [3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-

1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]phosphonic acid di sodium salt.

Example 82

5 Preparation of 5-Hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A solution of 375mg (1.23 mmol) of 5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (Example 3) and 5 mL of 1M BBr_3 /methylene chloride in 75 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 1.25 hours, and poured into 1N HCl. The methylene chloride layer was separated, washed with brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed at reduced pressure to give as residue 310mg (90% yield) of 5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 158-160°C.

15

Analyses for $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{16}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$:			
Calculated	C, 70.55;	H, 5.70;	N, 9.51.
Found	C, 72.84;	H, 5.75;	N, 9.99.

Example 83

20 Preparation of 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

A. 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester.

A solution of 280mg (1.0 mmol) of 5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide in 30 mL of DMSO and 10 mL of THF was treated with 45mg (1.1 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil, and then with 0.16 mL (1.1 mmol) of ethyl 4-bromobutyrate. The mixture was heated in an oil bath at 60°C for 2.25 hours. It was diluted with water, extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with water, saturated NaCl solution, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica (CH_2Cl_2 -3% MeOH/ CH_2Cl_2) to give 260mg (66% yield) of 4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester.

B. 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester (260mg, 0.66 mmol) was stirred with 2 mL of 2N NaOH in 25 mL of EtOH and 5 mL of THF for 18 hours. The mixture was acidified with 5N HCl, extracted with EtOAc, the EtOAc solution washed with saturated NaCl solution and dried (Na_2SO_4). After concentrating, the residue was crystallized from methylene chloride/ethanol to give 110mg (46% yield) of 4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid, mp, 160-163°C.

35

40

Analyses for $\text{C}_{21}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$:			
Calculated	C, 68.84;	H, 6.05;	N, 7.65.
Found	C, 68.98;	H, 5.89;	N, 7.82.

Example 84

45

Preparation of 3-[4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propane)sulfonic acid.

50 5-Hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (Example 2, 300mg, 1.0 mmol) was dissolved in 50 mL of THF, 40mg (1.0 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil added, stirred 0.25 hours, 125mg (1.0 mmol) of succinone added and the mixture stirred for 24 hours. The mixture was made acidic with 5N HCl and the concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from ethanol/water to give 145mg (35% yield) of 3-[4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propane)sulfonic acid, mp, 218-222°C.

55

Analyses for C ₂₁ H ₂₄ N ₂ O ₄ S:					
Calculated	C, 60.56;	H, 5.81;	N, 6.73;	S, 7.70.	
Found	C, 53.36;	H, 5.66;	N, 5.44;	S, 3.30;	residue, 15.32.

5 **Example 85**

10 Preparation of 3-[4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propane]sulfonic acid.

15 5-Hydroxy-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (310mg, 1.0 mmol) was dissolved in 50 mL of THF, 50mg (1.2 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil added, stirred 0.25 hours, 150mg (1.2 mmol) of sultone added and the mixture stirred for 24 hours. The mixture was acidified with 1.5 mL of 1N HCl and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on an C-18 reverse phase column (eluted with 10% (5%HOAc)/MeOH) to give 260mg(60% yield) of 3-[4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propane]sulfonic acid.

Analyses for C ₂₂ H ₂₆ N ₂ O ₅ S:					
Calculated	C, 61.38;	H, 6.09;	N, 6.51;	S, 7.45.	
Found	C, 56.00;	H, 5.79;	N, 5.52;	S, 3.85;	residue, 11.60.

25 **Example 86**

Preparation of [3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propane]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.

A. 5-Methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.

30 5-Methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester (10.1g, 41 mmol) was dissolved in 50 mL of THF and 200 mL of DMF and 1.8g (45 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil were added in portions with cooling. After 0.17 hours, 5 mL (42 mmol) of benzyl bromide was added and stirring maintained for 1.5 hours. The mixture was diluted with water and ethyl acetate, the organic layer separated, washed with water, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution was evaporated at reduced pressure and the residue chromatographed on silica gel eluting with a gradient, 25% ethyl acetate/hexane→40% ethyl acetate/hexane, to give 10.8g (82% yield) of 5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.

B. 2-Bromo-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.

40 A mixture of 5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester (10.8g, 32 mmol) and 6.3g (35 mmol) of N-bromosuccinimide in 250 mL of carbon tetrachloride was stirred for 1.5 hours, washed with Na₂S₂O₃ solution, water, brine, and dried (Na₂SO₄). After concentrating at reduced pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica gel and eluted with a gradient, 25% ether/hexane→40% ether/hexane, to give 5.5g (43% yield) of 2-bromo-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester.

45 There was obtained a second fraction from the chromatography, 6.4g. This material was reacted with 6.3g of NBS as above and rechromatographed on silica gel eluting with 30% ether/hexane→50% ether/hexane to give 5.4g of 2,4-dibromo-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester. After crystallizing from methylene chloride this material melted at 138-140°C.

Analyses for C ₂₀ H ₁₈ Br ₂ NO ₃ :				
Calculated	C, 49.92;	H, 3.98;	N, 2.91;	Br, 33.21.
Found	C, 49.95;	H, 4.15;	N, 2.89;	Br, 33.52.

55 C. 2-Bromo-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A mixture of 4g (10 mmol) of 2-bromo-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid ethyl ester and 50 mL of 0.67M (CH₃)₂AlNH₂/benzene/toluene in 100 mL of toluene was heated at 50°C for 7.5 hours, cooled, decomposed with ice and dilute HCl added. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and the ethyl acetate solution washed with brine, dried (Na₂SO₄), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The re-

5 residue of 2-bromo-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide weighed 4.0g.

D. 2-Bromo-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A solution of 4g (11 mmol) of 2-bromo-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 35 mL of BBr₃/methylene chloride in 200 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 1 hour, poured into ice-water, made basic with sodium bicarbonate and extracted with methylene chloride. This solution was washed with brine, dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel and eluted with ethyl acetate to give 1.35g (33% yield) of 2-bromo-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

E. [3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester. Using the procedure described in Example 81, Part A, 1.35g (3.8 mmol) of 2-bromo-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide was reacted with 170mg (4.2 mmol) of NaH/mineral oil and then 970mg (4.2 mmol) of (3-bromopropyl)phosphonic acid dimethyl ester to give a product that was chromatographed on silica gel (eluted with a gradient, 1% MeOH/methylene chloride → 3% MeOH/methylene chloride). There was obtained 520g (27% yield) of 3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester, melting approximately at 100°C after crystallizing from methylene chloride/ether.

Analyses for C ₂₂ H ₂₆ BrN ₂ O ₅ P:				
Calculated	C, 51.88;	H, 5.15;	N, 5.50;	Br, 15.69.
Found	C, 47.83;	H, 4.83;	N, 4.85;	Br, 20.07.

Example 87

25 Preparation of 3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid monomethyl ester.

A mixture of 255mg (0.5 mmol) of 3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester and 2 mL of 2N NaOH in 20 mL of MeOH was heated to maintain reflux for 23 hours, diluted with water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer was made acidic with 5N HCl and extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate was washed with brine, dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated at reduced pressure to give 210mg (84% yield) of 3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid monomethyl ester.

Analyses for C ₂₁ H ₂₄ BrN ₂ O ₅ P:				
Calculated	C, 50.92;	H, 4.58;	N, 5.66;	Br, 16.09.
Found	C, 50.08;	H, 4.68;	N, 4.18;	Br, 17.33.

Example 88

Preparation of 3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid.

45 A solution of 750mg (1.5 mmol) of 3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester and 2 mL (15 mmol) of trimethylsilyl bromide in 75 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 18.5 hours and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in 75 mL of methanol stirred for 1.5 hours and concentrated. The residue was crystallized from ethyl acetate/ethanol/methylene chloride to give 285mg (39% yield) of 3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid, mp, 188-190°C.

Analyses for C ₂₀ H ₂₂ BrN ₂ O ₅ P:				
Calculated	C, 49.91;	H, 4.61;	N, 5.82;	Br, 15.53.
Found	C, 47.99;	H, 4.73;	N, 5.37;	Br, 17.80.

The filtrate from the above crystallization was concentrated at reduced pressure and the residue chro-

matographed on a C-18 reverse phase column eluting with 5% (5% HOAc)/MeOH. This fraction was dissolved in 0.05N NaOH and put on a medium pressure HP-20 column and eluted with 10% acetonitrile/water->50% acetonitrile/water to give 195mg of 3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid disodium salt.

Analyses for $C_{20}H_{20}BrN_2O_5PNa_2$:				
Calculated	C, 46.51;	H, 3.90;	N, 4.83;	Br, 14.00.
Found	C, 45.73;	H, 3.84;	N, 5.33;	Br, 15.16.

Example 89

Preparation of 2-Bromo-6-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A. 6-Chloro-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester.

Using the procedure in Example 1, Part C, 5.2g (28.6 mmol) of 6-chloro-5-methoxy-1H-indole was reacted with 18.13 mL (29 mmol) of *n*-butyl lithium and 29 mL of 1N $ZnCl_2$ /ether and then 2.75 mL of methyl 2-bromoacetate to give a product that was chromatographed on silica gel(eluted with 5% EtOAc/toluene->10% EtOAc/toluene). There was obtained 4.66g (84% yield) of 6-chloro-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester as an oil

Analyses for $C_{12}H_{12}ClNO_3$:				
Calculated	C, 56.82;	H, 4.77;	N, 5.52.	
Found	C, 56.81;	H, 4.81;	N, 5.52.	

B. 6-Chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester.

6-Chloro-5-methoxy-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester (2.0g, 8 mmol) was dissolved in 75 mL of DMF and 20 mL of THF, 340mg (8.5 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil added, stirred 0.17 hours and 1.1 mL (9.2 mmol) of benzyl bromide added. After 0.75 hours, the mixture was added to water, extracted with ethyl acetate, the ethyl acetate solution washed with water, brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with 20% ether/hexane->50% ether/hexane to give 1.8g (87% yield) of 6-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester after crystallization from ether/hexane, mp, 64-66°C.

Analyses for $C_{19}H_{18}ClNO_3$:				
Calculated	C, 66.38;	H, 5.08;	N, 4.07;	Cl, 10.31.
Found	C, 66.37;	H, 5.25;	N, 4.13;	Cl, 10.07.

C. 2-Bromo-6-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester.

A mixture of 1.0g (3.0 mmol) of 6-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester and 600mg (3.3 mmol) of NBS in 100 mL of carbon tetrachloride was stirred for 30 hours. The mixture was washed with $Na_2S_2O_3$ solution, brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel and eluted with a gradient, 20% ether/hexane->100% ether, to give 1.0g (79% yield) of 2-bromo-6-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester that melted at 133-134°C after crystallization from methylene chloride/ether.

Analyses for $C_{19}H_{17}BrClNO_3$:					
Calculated	C, 53.99;	H, 4.05;	N, 3.31;	Br, 18.90;	Cl, 8.40.
Found	C, 54.70;	H, 4.11;	N, 3.38;	Br, 16.04;	Cl, 9.97.

D. 2-Bromo-6-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

A mixture of 950mg (2.18 mmol) of 2-bromo-6-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester and 20 mL of 0.67M $(CH_3)_2AlNH_2$ /benzene/toluene in 75 mL of benzene was heated at 50°C

for 1.5 hour, cooled, decomposed with ice and dilute HCl add d. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and the ethyl acetate solution washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from ethanol/methylene chloride to give 580mg (65% yield) of 2-bromo-6-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 205°C (decomposition).

5

10

Analyses for $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{16}\text{BrClN}_2\text{O}_2$:

Calculated	C, 53.03;	H, 3.96;	N, 6.87;	Br, 19.60;	Cl, 8.70.
Found	C, 53.72;	H, 4.42;	N, 6.97;	Br, 19.28;	Cl, 9.36.

Example 90

Preparation of 2-Bromo-6-chloro-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-H-indole-3-acetamide.

A solution of 730mg (1.8 mmol) of 2-bromo-6-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-H-indole-3-acetamide and 10 mL of 1N BBr_3 /methylene chloride in 75 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 2.5 hours, 1N HCl added and stirred. The organic solution was separated, washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with 2% MeOH/methylene chloride \rightarrow 4% MeOH/methylene chloride to give 280mg (45% yield) of 2-bromo-6-chloro-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-H-indole-3-acetamide, mp, 195°C(decomposition).

25

Analyses for $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{14}\text{BrClN}_2\text{O}_2$:

Calculated	C, 51.87;	H, 3.59;	N, 7.17;	Br, 20.30;	Cl, 9.01.
Found	C, 50.96;	H, 3.66;	N, 6.89;	Br, 19.48;	Cl, 9.49.

30

Example 91

Preparation of 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid.

A. 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester.

Using the procedure in Example 83, Part A, 235mg (0.6 mmol) of 2-bromo-6-chloro-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-H-indole-3-acetamide was treated with 25mg (0.6 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and then 0.1 mL (0.7 mmol) of ethyl 4-bromobutyrate to give a product that was chromatographed on silica gel. A gradient of methylene chloride \rightarrow 2% MeOH/methylene was used to elute 210mg (69% yield) of 4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester.

B. 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid. A mixture of 210mg (0.41 mmol) of 4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid ethyl ester and 2 mL of 2N NaOH in 5 mL of THF and 25 mL of ethanol was stirred for 10.5 hours, the mixture made acidic with 5N HCl and extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate solution was washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from methylene chloride/ethanol to give 60mg (31% yield) of 4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid, 220°C(decomposition).

35

40

45

50

Analyses for $\text{C}_{21}\text{H}_{20}\text{BrClN}_2\text{O}_4$:

Calculated	C, 52.57;	H, 4.20;	N, 5.84;	Br, 18.85;	Cl, 7.39.	
Found	C, 54.03;	H, 4.45;	N, 5.80;	Br, 11.57;	Cl, 8.98;	residue, 1.35.

55

Example 92

Preparation of 3-[4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid.

A. 6-Chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide. By the method in Example 89, Part D, 1.1g (3.2 mmol) of 6-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetic acid methyl ester (Example 89, Part B) and 20 mL of $(CH_3)_2AlNH_2$ /benzene/toluene in 40 mL of benzene were reacted to give 970mg (88% yield) of 6-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

B. 6-Chloro-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide. A solution of 970mg (2.8 mmol) of 6-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide and 10 mL of 1N BBr_3 /methylene chloride in 100 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 5 hours, 1N HCl added and stirred. The organic solution was separated, washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with 1% MeOH/methylene chloride \rightarrow 3% MeOH/methylene chloride to give 470mg (53% yield) of 6-chloro-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

C. 3-[4-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester. Using the method in Example 80, Part C, 470mg (1.5 mmol) of 6-chloro-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide was reacted with 75mg (1.8 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and 415mg (1.8 mmol) of (3-bromopropyl)phosphonic acid dimethyl ester to give a product that was chromatographed on silica gel. On eluting with 1% MeOH/methylene chloride \rightarrow 4% MeOH/methylene chloride, there was obtained 400mg (57% yield) of 3-[4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.

D. 3-[4-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid. 3-[4-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester 400mg (0.86 mmol) was treated with 1 mL of trimethylsilyl bromide in 30 mL of methylene chloride as in Example 80, Part E, to give after crystallizing from acetonitrile/ethyl acetate/ether, 235mg (63% yield) of 3-[4-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid.

Analyses for $C_{20}H_{22}ClN_2O_5P$:				
Calculated	C, 54.99;	H, 5.08;	N, 6.41;	Cl, 8.12.
Found	C, 49.82;	H, 5.03;	N, 7.71;	Cl, 9.86.

Example 93

Preparation of 4-Allyl-2-ethyl-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-acetamide.

A. 5-Allyloxy-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-acetamide. 2-Ethyl-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-acetamide (620mg, 2.0 mmol, Example 9) was dissolved in 10 mL of THF and 40 mL of DMF, 90mg (2.2 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil added and after stirring 0.17 hours, 0.2 mL (2.3 mmol) of allyl bromide was added. After 2 hours, the mixture was diluted with water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate solution was washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel (eluted with 1% MeOH/methylene chloride \rightarrow 3% MeOH/methylene chloride) to give 770mg of 5-allyloxy-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-acetamide.

B. 4-Allyl-2-ethyl-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-acetamide. 5-Allyloxy-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-acetamide (770mg, 2.21 mmol) in 20 mL of N,N-dimethylaniline were heated in an oil bath at 190°C for 20 hours. The mixture was cooled, diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with 1N HCl, brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel and eluted with 1% MeOH/methylene chloride \rightarrow 3% MeOH/methylene chloride to give 295mg (38% yield) of 4-allyl-2-ethyl-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-acetamide.

Analyses for $C_{22}H_{24}N_2O_2$:			
Calculated	C, 75.83;	H, 6.74;	N, 8.04.
Found	C, 75.70;	H, 7.05;	N, 8.06.

Example 94

Preparation of [3-[4-Allyl-3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid disodium salt

A. [3-[4-Allyl-3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid

dimethyl ester.

Using the method in Example 80, Part C, 265mg (0.8 mmol) of 4-allyl-2-ethyl-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-acetamide was reacted with 40mg (1.0 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and 230mg (1.0 mmol) of (3-bromopropyl)phosphonic acid dimethyl ester to give a product that was chromatographed on silica gel. On eluting with 1% MeOH/methylene chloride→4% MeOH/methylene chloride, there was obtained 310mg (78% yield) of [3-[[4-allyl-3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester.

B. [3-[[4-Allyl-3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid disodium salt.

A solution of 310mg (0.62 mmol) of [3-allyl-3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid dimethyl ester and 1.0 mL (7.8 mmol) of trimethylsilyl bromide in 20 mL of methylene chloride was stirred for 18.5 hours and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in 20 mL of MeOH, stirred 2.5 hours and concentrated. This residue was chromatographed on a C₁₈ reverse phase column and eluted with 10%(5% HOAc)/MeOH. Material from this column was dissolved in 1N NaOH and chromatographed on a HP20 column. The product was eluted with 10% acetonitrile/water, then 25% acetonitrile/water to give 165mg (52% yield) of [3-[[4-allyl-3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid disodium salt.

Analyses for C ₂₅ H ₂₉ N ₂ O ₅ PNa ₂ .3H ₂ O:			
Calculated	C, 52.82;	H, 6.21;	N, 4.93.
Found	C, 52.15;	H, 5.50;	N, 4.65.

25 Example 95

Preparation of 2-Methyl-5-phenoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

5-Hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide (1.2g, 4.1 mmol) was dissolved in 40 mL of pyridine, 90mg (2.2 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil added, stirred 0.17 hours, 315mg of CuO added, stirred 0.17 hours and 0.5(4.1 mmol) mL of iodobenzene added. The mixture was heated to maintain reflux for 24 hours, cooled, and diluted with ethyl acetate and 1N HCl. The mixture was filtered thru a celite pad and the organic material separated, washed with brine, dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel and eluted with 1% MeOH/methylene chloride→3% MeOH/methylene chloride to give 40mg (3% yield) of 2-methyl-5-phenoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide.

Example 96

Preparation of 2-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]benzoic acid methyl ester.

Using the procedure in Example 83, Part A, 300mg (1.0 mmol) of 5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide was treated with 45mg (1.1 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and then 250m (1.1 mmol) of methyl 2-(bromomethyl)benzoate to give a product that was chromatographed on silica gel. A gradient of methylene chloride→2% MeOH/methylene was used to elute 270mg (69% yield) of 2-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]benzoic acid methyl ester, mp, 178-180°C.

Analyses for C ₂₇ H ₂₈ N ₂ O ₄ :			
Calculated	C, 73.28;	H, 5.92;	N, 6.33.
Found	C, 72.29;	H, 5.93;	N, 6.03.

Example 97

55 Preparation of 2-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]benzoic acid.

A mixture of 195mg (0.44 mmol) of 2-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]benzoic acid methyl ester and 2 mL of 2N NaOH in 10 mL of THF and 35 mL of ethanol was stirred for 17.5 hours, the mixture made acidic with 5N HCl and extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate solution

was washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from methylene chloride to give 110mg (59% yield) of 2-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]benzoic acid, mp, 173-176°C.

Analyses for $\text{C}_{26}\text{H}_{24}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$:

Calculated C, 72.88; H, 5.65; N, 6.54.
Found: C, 71.90; H, 5.63; N, 6.13.

Example 98

10 Preparation of 2-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]benzoic acid methyl ester.

Using the procedure in Example 83, Part A, 620mg (2.0 mmol) of 5-hydroxy-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-H-indole-3-acetamide was treated with 90mg (2.2 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and then 505mg (2.2 mmol) of methyl 2-(bromomethyl)benzoate to give a product that was chromatographed on silica gel. A gradient of 1% MeOH/methylene chloride → 2% MeOH/methylene was used to elute 180mg (18% yield) of 2-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]benzoic acid methyl ester, mp, 132-134°C.

Analyses for $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{26}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$:			
Calculated	C, 73.66;	H, 6.18;	N, 6.14.
Found	C, 74.36;	H, 6.20;	N, 5.82.

Example 99

Preparation of 2-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]benzoic acid.

A mixture of 495mg (1.08 mmol) of 2-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]benzoic acid methyl ester and 2 mL of 5N NaOH in 25 mL of ethanol was stirred for 17 hours, the mixture made acidic with 5N HCl and extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate solution was washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from methylene chloride/ether to give 440mg (92% yield) of 2-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]benzoic acid, mp, approximately 100°C.

Example 100

Preparation of 3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]benzoic acid methyl ester.

Using the procedure in Example 83, Part A, 910mg (3.0 mmol) of 5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-H-indole-3-acetamide was treated with 135mg (3.3 mmol) of 60% NaH/mineral oil and then 760m (3.3 mmol) of methyl 3-(bromomethyl)benzoate to give a product that was chromatographed on silica gel. A gradient of 1% MeOH/methylene chloride → 3% MeOH/methylene was used to elute a product that was recrystallized from methylene chloride/ethanol. A yield of 885mg (69%) of 3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]benzoic acid methyl ester was obtained, mp, 147-149°C.

Analyses for $\text{C}_{27}\text{H}_{26}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$:			
Calculated	C, 73.28;	H, 5.92;	N, 6.33.
Found	C, 73.03;	H, 5.86;	N, 6.22.

50

Example 101

Preparation of 3-[[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]benzoic acid.

55 A mixture of 470mg (1.06 mmol) of 3-[[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]benzoic acid methyl ester and 2 mL of 2N NaOH in 10 mL of THF and 40 mL of ethanol was stirred for 7.5 hours, the mixture made acidic with 5N HCl and extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate solution was washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated at reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized

from methylen chloride/ethanol to give 330mg (72% yield) of 3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy[methyl]benzoic acid, mp, 176-179°C.

Analyses for C ₂₈ H ₂₄ N ₂ O ₄ :			
Calculated	C, 72.88;	H, 5.65;	N, 6.54.
Found	C, 70.01;	H, 5.55;	N, 6.11.

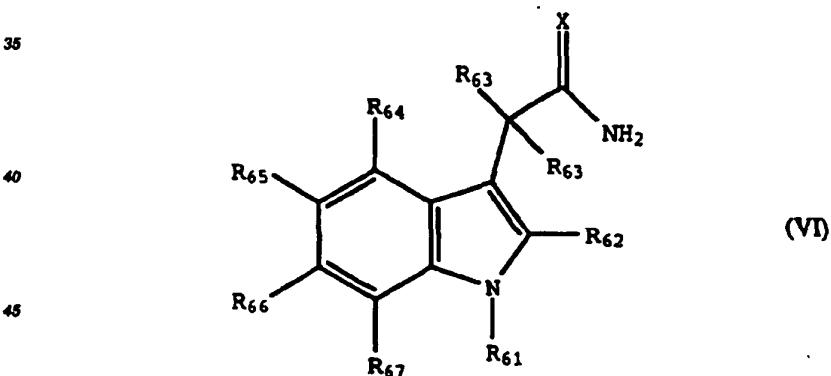
10 Therapeutic use of 1H-indole-3-acetamides

15 Tests of the 1H-indole-3-acetamides described herein have shown they achieve their beneficial therapeutic action principally by direct inhibition of human sPLA₂, and not by acting as antagonists for arachidonic acid, nor other active agents below arachidonic acid in the arachidonic acid cascade, such as 5-lipoxygenases, cyclooxygenases, and etc.

16 The method of the invention for inhibiting sPLA₂ mediated release of fatty acids comprises contacting sPLA₂ with an therapeutically effective amount of the 1H-indole-3-acetamides of the invention and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

20 A preferred method of the invention comprises contacting sPLA₂ with an therapeutically effective amount of 1H-indole-3-acetamide and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof where said acetamide is substituted at the 4 and/or 5 position with an -oxyalkyl acid, -oxyalkyl ester, -oxyalkylamine, -oxybenzyl (where the phenyl group of the benzyl radical is substituted with an acid group, ester group, amine group, or suitable salt thereof); and is substituted at the 1 position with a benzyl or biphenyl group and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof. Still another preferred method of the invention comprises contacting sPLA₂ with an therapeutically effective amount of 1H-indole-3-acetamide, where said acetamide is substituted at the 4 and/or 5 position with an acidic group, and is substituted at the 2 position with a group containing oxygen, nitrogen or sulfur group, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

25 The preferred novel compounds of this invention are most preferably used for practicing the method of inhibiting sPLA₂ mediated release of fatty acids. This method comprises contacting sPLA₂ with an therapeutically effective amount of 1H-indole-3-acetamide and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, represented by the formula (VI):

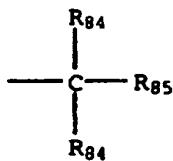


X is oxygen or sulfur;

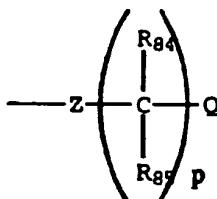
R₆₁ is selected from groups (i), (ii) and (iii) where:

- (i) is C₆-C₂₀ alkyl, C₆-C₂₀ alkenyl, C₆-C₂₀ alkynyl, C₆-C₂₀ haloalkyl, C₄-C₁₂ cycloalkyl, or
- (ii) is aryl or aryl substituted by halo, -CN, -CHO, -OH, -SH, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxythio, carboxyl, amino, or hydroxyamino;
- (iii) is

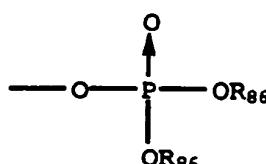
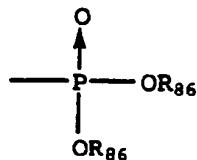
EP 0 620 215 A1

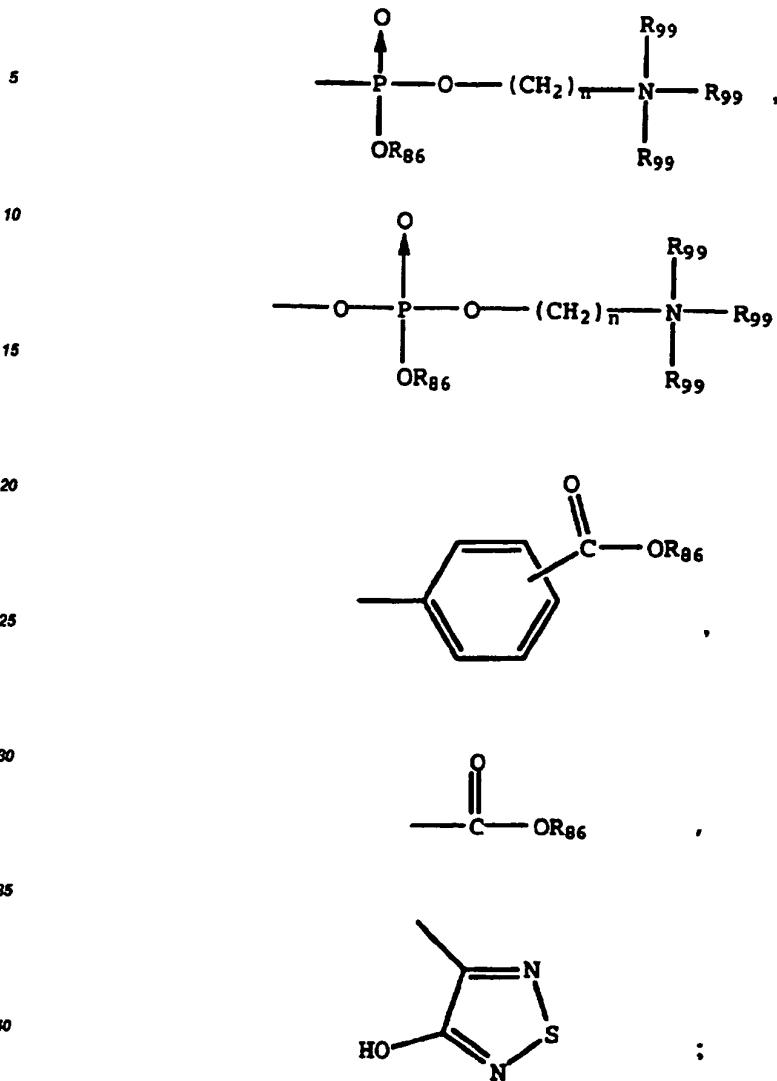


where R_{84} is hydrogen or C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, and R_{85} is selected from the group: phenyl, naphthyl, indenyl, and biphenyl, unsubstituted or substituted by halo, -CN, -CHO, -OH, nitro, phenyl, -SH, C_1 - C_{10} alkylthio, C_1 - C_{10} alkoxy, amino, hydroxyamino or a substituted or unsubstituted 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring;
 10 R_{82} is hydrogen, halo, C_1 - C_3 alkyl, ethenyl, cyclopropyl, C_1 - C_2 alkylthio, C_1 - C_2 alkoxy, -CHO, -CN; each R_{83} is independently hydrogen, or halo;
 15 R_{84} , R_{85} , R_{86} , and R_{87} are each independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, C_1 - C_{10} alkenyl, C_1 - C_{10} alkynyl, C_3 - C_8 cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, or any two adjacent hydrocarbyl groups in the set R_{84} , R_{85} , R_{86} , and R_{87} , combine
 20 with the ring carbon atoms to which they are attached to form a 5 or 6 membered substituted or unsubstituted carbocyclic ring; or C_1 - C_{10} haloalkyl, C_1 - C_{10} alkoxy, C_1 - C_{10} haloalkoxy, C_4 - C_8 cycloalkoxy, phenoxy, halo, hydroxy, carboxyl, -SH, -CN, -S(C_1 - C_{10} alkyl), arythio, thioacetal, -C(O)O(C_1 - C_{10} alkyl), hydrazide, hydrazino, hydrazido, -NH₂, -NO₂, -NR₈₂R₈₃, and -C(O)NR₈₂R₈₃, where, R_{82} and R_{83} are independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, C_1 - C_{10} hydroxyalkyl, or taken together with N, R_{82} and R_{83} form a 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring; or a group having the formula;



30 where,
 R_{84} and R_{85} are each independently selected from hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, hydroxy, or R_{84} and R_{85} taken together are =O;
 35 p is 1 to 5,
 Z is a bond, -O-, -N(C_1 - C_{10} alkyl)-, -NH-, or -S-; and
 Q is -CON(R_{82} R₈₃), -5-tetrazolyl, -SO₃H.





45 where n is 1 to 8, R₈₆ is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₉₉ is selected from hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl.

Another aspect of this invention is a method for treating septic shock in humans which comprises administering to a human a therapeutically effective dose of 1H-indole-3-acetamide and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof. A preferred method for treating septic shock is to administer to humans either (1) a 1H-indole-3-acetamide substituted at the 4 and/or 5 position and substituted at the 1 position with a benzyl or biphenyl group (or a pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof); or (2) a 1H-indole-3-acetamide substituted at the 4 and/or 5 position and substituted at the 2 position with a halogen, oxygen, nitrogen or sulfur group; or (3) a 1H-indole-3-acetamide substituted at the 4 and/or 5 position and is substituted at the 2 position with an alkyl group of 1 to 3 carbon atoms. When the 1H-indole-3-acetamide nucleus is substituted at the 4 positions the preferred groups are selected from the group:

55

- O - CH₂ - R₉₉,
- S - CH₂ - R₉₉,
- NH - CH₂ - R₉₉ and
- CH₂ - CH₂ - R₉₉;

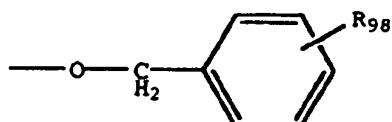
where acidic group R₉₈ is selected from;

- CO₂H
- SO₃H
- P(O)(OH)₂

5 or salts, and ester derivatives
of such acidic groups.

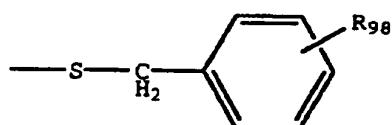
When the 1H-indole-3-acetamide nucleus is substituted at the 5 positions the preferred groups are selected from the group:

10

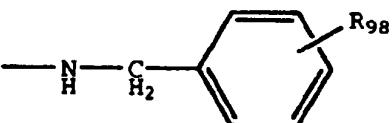


15

20

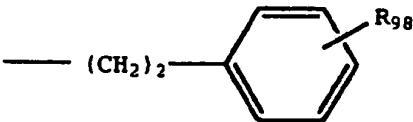


25



30

35



40

where acidic group R₆₈ is selected from;

- O - (CH₂)₂₋₄ - R₆₈
- S - (CH₂)₂₋₄ - R₆₈
- NH - (CH₂)₂₋₄ - R₆₈
- CH₂ - (CH₂)₂₋₄ - R₆₈

45 or salts, and ester derivatives
of such acidic groups.

Pharmaceutical Formulations

50 As previously noted the compounds of this invention are useful for inhibiting sPLA₂ mediated release of fatty acids such as arachidonic acid. By the term, "inhibiting" is meant the prevention or therapeutically significant reduction in release of sPLA₂ initiated fatty acids by the compounds of the invention.

55 The specific dose of a compound administered according to this invention to obtain therapeutic or prophylactic effects will, of course, be determined by the particular circumstances surrounding the case, including, for example, the compound administered, the route of administration and the condition being treated. Typical daily doses will contain a non-toxic dosage level of from about 0.01 mg/kg to about 50 mg/kg of body weight of an active compound of this invention.

The compound can be administered by a variety of routes including oral, aerosol, rectal, transdermal, subcutaneous, intravenous, intramuscular, and intranasal. Pharmaceutical formulations of the invention are prepared by combining (e.g., mixing) a therapeutically effective amount of the 1H-indole-3-acetamides of the invention together with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent therefor. The compounds of the present invention are preferably formulated prior to administration.

5 The active ingredient in such formulations comprises from 0.1% to 99.9% by weight of the formulation. By "pharmaceutically acceptable" it is meant the carrier, diluent or excipient must be compatible with the other ingredients of the formulation and not deleterious to the recipient thereof.

10 The present pharmaceutical formulations are prepared by known procedures using well known and readily available ingredients. In making the compositions of the present invention, the active ingredient will usually be admixed with a carrier, or diluted by a carrier, or enclosed within a carrier which may be in the form of a capsule, sachet, paper or other container. When the carrier serves as a diluent, it may be a solid, semi-solid or liquid material which acts as a vehicle, or can be in the form of tablets, pills, powders, lozenges, elixirs, suspensions, emulsions, solutions, syrups, aerosols (as a solid or in a liquid medium), or ointment, containing, for 15 example, up to 10% by weight of the active compound.

Tablets for oral administration may contain suitable excipients such as calcium carbonate, sodium carbonate, lactose, calcium phosphate, together with disintegrating agents, such as maize, starch, or alginic acid, and/or binding agents, for example, gelatin or acacia, and lubricating agents such as magnesium stearate, stearic acid, or talc.

20 The following formulation examples are illustrative only and are not intended to limit the scope of the invention in any way. The term, 'Active Ingredient', means a 1H-indole-3-acetamide compound of the invention or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

Formulation 1

25

A tablet is prepared using the ingredients below:

	Quantity - (mg/capsule)
30	Active Ingredient 250
	Cellulose, microcrystalline 400
	Silicon dioxide, fumed 10
35	Stearic acid 5

The components are blended and compressed to form tablets, each weighing 665 mg.

Formulation 2

40

An aerosol solution is prepared containing the following components:

	Weight
45	Active Ingredient 0.25
	Ethanol 25.75
	Chlorodifluoromethane propellant 74.00

50 The Active Ingredient is mixed with ethanol and the mixture added to a portion of the propellant, cooled to -30°C and transferred to a filling device. The required amount is then fed to a stainless steel container and diluted with the remainder of the propellant. The valve units are then fitted to the container.

Assay Experiments

55

Assay Example 1

The following chromogenic assay procedure was used to identify and evaluate inhibitors of recombinant

5 human secreted phospholipase A₂. The assay described herein has been adapted for high volume screening using 96 well microtiter plates. A general description of this assay method is found in the article, "Analysis of Human Synovial Fluid Phospholipase A₂ on Short Chain Phosphatidylcholine-Mixed Micelles: Development of a Spectrophotometric Assay Suitable for a Microtiterplate Reader", by Laure J. Reynolds, Lori L. Hughes, and Edward A Dennis, Analytical Biochemistry, 204, pp. 190-197, 1992: Reagents:

REACTION BUFFER -

10 CaCl₂.2H₂O (1.47 g/L)
 KCl (7.455 g/L)
 Bovine Serum Albumin (fatty acid free) (1 g/L)
 (Sigma A-7030, product of Sigma Chemical Co. St. Louis MO, USA)
 TRIS HCl (3.94 g/L)
 pH 7.5 (adjust with NaOH)

15 ENZYME BUFFER -

20 0.05 NaOAc.3H₂O, pH 4.5
 0.2 NaCl
 Adjust pH to 4.5 with acetic acid

DTNB - 5,5'-dithiobis-2-nitrobenzoic acid

25 RACEMIC DIHEPTANOYL THIO - PC

30 racemic 1,2-bis(heptanoylthio)-1,2-dideoxy-sn-glycero-3-phosphorylcholine
 TRITON X-100™ prepare at 6.249 mg/ml in reaction buffer to equal 10uM.

REACTION MIXTURE -

35 A measured volume of racemic diheptanoyl thio PC supplied in chloroform at a concentration of 100 mg/ml is taken to dryness and redissolved in 10 millimolar TRITON X-100™ nonionic detergent aqueous solution. Reaction Buffer is added to the solution, then DTNB to give the Reaction Mixture.

The reaction mixture thus obtained contains 1mM diheptanoyl thio-PC substrate, 0.29 mM Triton X-100™ detergent, and 0.12 mM DTMB in a buffered aqueous solution at pH 7.5.

Assay Procedure:

1. Add 0.2 ml reaction mixture to all wells;
2. Add 10 μ l test compound (or solvent blank) to appropriate wells, mix 20 seconds;
3. Add 50 nanograms of sPLA₂ (10 microliters) to appropriate wells;
4. Incubate plate at 40°C for 30 minutes;
5. Read absorbance of wells at 405 nanometers with an automatic plate reader.

40 All compounds were tested in triplicate. Typically, compounds were tested at a final concentration of 5 μ g/ml. Compounds were considered active when they exhibited 40% inhibition or greater compared to uninhibited control reactions when measured at 405 nanometers. Lack of color development at 405 nanometers evidenced inhibition. Compounds initially found to be active were reassayed to confirm their activity and, if sufficiently active, IC₅₀ values were determined. Typically, the IC₅₀ values were determined by diluting test compound serially two-fold such that the final concentration in the reaction ranged from 45 μ g/mL to 0.35 μ g/mL. More potent inhibitors required significantly greater dilution. In all cases, % inhibition measured at 405 nanometers generated by enzyme reactions containing inhibitors relative to the uninhibited control reactions was 45 determined. Each sample was titrated in triplicate and result values were averaged for plotting and calculation of IC₅₀ values. IC₅₀ were determined by plotting log concentration versus inhibition values in the range from 50 10-90% inhibition. Each IC₅₀ value was determined three times.

55 Results of Human Secreted Phospholipase A2 Inhibition Tests-Amides

5	Example	Inhibition of human secreted PLA ₂ IC ₅₀ ± mean deviation
		(3-5 tests)
10	1	1.33 ± 0.45 uM
15	2	0.84 ± 0.38 uM
20	3	3.70 ± 2.82 uM
25	4	2.05 ± 0.85 uM
30	5	0.84 ± 0.17 uM
35	6	1.30 ± 0.29 uM
40	7	5.45 ± 1.62 uM
45	8	21.39 ± 8.55 uM
50	9	0.26 ± 0.11 uM
	10	38.08 ± 2.82 uM
	11	0.25 ± 0.03 uM
	12	0.40 ± 0.09 uM
	13	0.92 ± 0.24 uM
	14	8.48 ± 5.25 uM
	15	1.51 ± 0.58 uM
	16	1.84 ± 0.44 uM
	17	1.61 ± 0.44 uM
	18	0.80 ± 0.05 uM
	19	1.16 ± 0.41 uM
	20	1.05 ± 0.11 uM
	21	0.43 ± 0.23 uM
	22	0.15 ± 0.04 uM
	23	0.92 ± 0.36 uM
	24	0.06 ± 0.02 uM
	25	3.34 ± 0.46 uM
	26	2.49 uM

Example	Inhibition of human secreted PLA ₂ IC50 ± mean deviation
	(3-5 tests)
27	3.30 ± 0.10 uM
28	1.55 ± 0.93 uM
29	1.23 ± 0.33 uM
30	3.61 ± 0.75 uM
31	0.45 ± 0.08 uM
32	12.21 ± 0.55 uM
33	0.30 ± 0.12 uM
34	7.96 ± 1.22 uM
35	2.36 ± 0.15 uM
36	7.46 ± 1.66 uM
37	9.44 ± 1.44 uM
38	0.40 ± 0.07 uM
39	1.38 ± 0.28 uM
40	0.05 ± 0.01 uM
41	0.06 ± 0.01 uM
42	0.23 ± 0.06 uM
43	0.07 ± 0.03 uM
44	0.38 ± 0.14 uM
45	1.55 ± 0.51 uM
46	0.16 ± 0.19 uM
47	0.09 ± 0.06 uM
48	>100 uM
49	0.47 ± 0.05 uM
50	2.47 ± 1.31 uM
51	8.28 ± 4.33 uM
52	0.77 ± 0.27 uM
53	0.68 ± 0.00 uM
54	0.65 ± 0.15 uM

50

55

	Inhibition of human secreted PLA ₂ IC50 \pm mean deviation
	(3-5 tests)
5	
55	22.0 \pm 6.0 μ M
56	0.34 \pm 0.10 μ M
10	
57	1.27 μ M
58	0.05 \pm 0.00 μ M
15	
59	0.074 \pm 0.016 μ M
60	0.104 \pm 0.017 μ M
20	
61	0.27 μ M
62	0.02 \pm 0.01 μ M
25	
63	0.039 \pm 0.005 μ M
64	0.016 \pm 0.001 μ M
30	
65	0.36 \pm 0.13 μ M
66	0.36 \pm 0.07 μ M
35	
67	1.68 μ M
68	1.45 μ M; 1.12 μ M
40	
69	1.38 \pm 0.52 μ M
70	5.88 \pm 1.17 μ M
45	
71	2.37 \pm 0.79 μ M
72	0.050 \pm 0.15 μ M
50	
73	0.010 \pm 0.001 μ M
74	0.024 \pm 0.002 μ M
75	0.039 \pm 0.004 μ M
76	0.337 μ M; 0.305 μ M
77	0.336 \pm 0.023 μ M
78	0.118 \pm 0.011 μ M
79	0.046 \pm 0.006 μ M
80	0.20 \pm 0.09 μ M
81	3.8 μ M; 3.6 μ M
82	3.68 \pm 0.19 μ M

Inhibition of human secreted PLA ₂ IC ₅₀ ± mean deviation	
	Example (3-5 tests)
5	83 0.15 ± 0.04 uM
10	84 0.195 ± 0.065 uM
15	85 0.050 ± 0.019 uM
20	86 0.42 ± 0.21 uM
25	87 0.072 ± 0.017 uM
30	88 0.033 ± 0.006 uM
35	89 0.12 ± 0.02 uM
	90 0.09 ± 0.01 uM
	91 0.02 ± 0.01 uM
	92 0.014 ± 0.004 uM
	93 0.14 ± 0.04 uM
	94 0.612 ± 0.065 uM
	95 1.01 ± 0.32 uM
	96 0.62 ± 0.18 uM
	97 0.15 ± 0.01 uM
	98 1.15 ± 0.32 uM
	99 0.54 ± 0.18 uM
	100 3.84 ± 1.32 uM
	101 1.89 ± 0.50 uM

Assay Example 2

Method:

40 Male Hartley strain guinea pigs (500-700g) were killed by cervical dislocation and their heart and lungs removed intact and placed in aerated (95% O₂:5% CO₂) Krebs buffer. Dorsal pleural strips (4x1x25mm) were dissected from intact parenchymal segments (8x4x25mm) cut parallel to the outer edge of the lower lung lobes. Two adjacent pleural strips, obtained from a single lobe and representing a single tissue sample, were tied at either end and independently attached to a metal support rod. One rod was attached to a Grass force-displacement transducer (Model FTO3C, product of Grass Medical Instruments Co., Quincy, MA, USA). Changes in isometric tension were displayed on a monitor and thermal recorder (product of Modular Instruments, Malvern, PA). All tissues were placed in 10 ml jacketed tissue baths maintained at 37°C. The tissue baths were continuously aerated and contained a modified Krebs solution of the following composition (millimolar) NaCl, 118.2; KCl, 4.6; CaCl₂·2H₂O, 2.5; MgSO₄·7H₂O, 1.2; NaHCO₃, 24.8; KH₂PO₄, 1.0; and dextrose, 10.0. Pleural strips from the opposite lobes of the lung were used for paired experiments. Preliminary data generated from tension/response curves demonstrated that resting tension of 800mg was optimal. The tissues were allowed to equilibrate for 45 min. as the bath fluid was changed periodically.

55 Cumulative concentration-response curves:

Initially tissues were challenged 3 times with KCl (40 mM) to test tissue viability and to obtain a consistent response. After recording the maximal response to KCl, the tissues were washed and allowed to return to base-

line before the next challenge. Cumulative concentration-response curves were obtained from pleural strips by increasing the agonist concentration (sPLA₂) in the tissue bath by half-log₁₀ increments while the previous concentration remained in contact with the tissues (Ref.1, supra.) Agonist concentration was increased after reaching the plateau of the contraction elicited by the preceding concentration. One concentration-response curve was obtained from each tissue. To minimize variability between tissues obtained from different animals, contractile responses were expressed as a percentage of the maximal response obtained with the final KCl challenge. When studying the effects of various drugs on the contractile effects of sPLA₂, the compounds and their respective vehicles were added to the tissues 30 min. prior to starting the sPLA₂ concentration-response curves.

10 Statistical analysis:

15 Data from different experiments were pooled and presented as a percentage of the maximal KCl responses (mean \pm S.E.). To estimate the drug induced rightward shifts in the concentration response curves, the curves were analyzed simultaneously using statistical nonlinear modeling methods similar to those described by Waud (1976), Equation 26, p. 163, (Ref.2). The model includes four parameters: the maximum tissue response which was assumed the same for each curve, the ED₅₀ for the control curve, the steepness of the curves, and the pA₂, the concentration of antagonist that requires a two-fold increase in agonist to achieve an equivalent response. The Schild slope was determined to be 1, using statistical nonlinear modeling methods similar to those described by Waud (1976), Equation 27, p. 164 (Ref. 2). The Schild slope equal to 1 indicates the model is consistent with the assumptions of a competitive antagonist; therefore, the pA₂ may be interpreted as the apparent K_i, the dissociation constant of the inhibitor.

20 To estimate the drug-induced suppression of the maximal responses, sPLA₂ responses (10 μ g/ml) were determined in the absence and presence of drug, and percent suppression was calculated for each pair of tissues. Representative examples of inhibitory activities are presented in Table 2, below.

25 Ref. 1 - van, J.M.: Cumulative dose-response curves. II. Technique for the making of dose-response curves in isolated organs and the evaluation of drug parameters. Arch. Int. Pharmacodyn. Ther. 143: 299-330, 1963.

30 Ref. 2 - Waud, D.: Analysis of dose-response relationships. in Advances in General and Cellular Pharmacology eds Narahashi, Blanchi 1:145-178, 1976.

35

40

45

50

55

TABLE 2

Tissue Test (sPLA ₂)		
Compound of Example No.	Apparent K _B (μ M)	%Supp (30 μ M) ³ (10 μ M) ⁴
4	22.54 \pm 3.91	10.5 \pm 23.1
5	3.43 \pm 0.88	74.9 \pm 4.2
9	5.91 \pm 0.97	49.2 \pm 9.4
12	7.93 \pm 3.52	30.3 \pm 15.2
16	4.92 \pm 0.60	51.7 \pm 4.2
18	1.98 \pm 0.35	74.1 \pm 4.0
23	2.38 \pm 0.59	83.3 \pm 2.7

Notes:

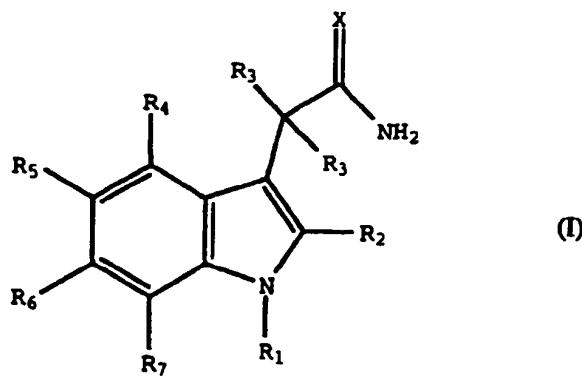
3 % suppression of sPLA₂ contraction at compound concentration of 30 μ M.

4 % suppression of sPLA₂ contraction at compound concentration of 10 μ M.

While the present invention has been illustrated above by certain specific embodiments, it is not intended that these specific examples should limit the scope of the invention as described in the appended claims.

Claims

1. A 1H-indole-3-acetamide represented by the formula (I), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof;



wherein;

X is oxygen or sulfur;

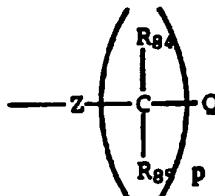
R₁ is selected from groups (i), (ii) and (iii) where;

(i) is C_6 - C_{20} alkyl, C_6 - C_{20} alkenyl, C_6 - C_{20} alkynyl, C_6 - C_{20} haloalkyl, C_4 - C_{12} cycloalkyl, or
 (ii) is aryl or aryl substituted by halo, -CN, -CHO, -OH, nitro, -SH, C_1 - C_{10} alkylthio, C_1 - C_{10} alkoxy, C_1 -
 5 C_{10} alkyl, carboxyl, amino, or hydroxyamino; or

(iii) is $-(CH_2)_n-(R_{80})$, or $-(NH)-(R_{81})$, where n is 1 to 8, and R_{80} is a group recited in (i), and R_{81} is selected
 10 from a group recited in (i) or (ii);

R_2 is hydrogen, halo, C_1 - C_3 alkyl, ethenyl, C_1 - C_2 alkylthio, C_1 - C_2 alkoxy, -CHO, or -CN;
 each R_3 is independently hydrogen, halo, or methyl;

15 R_4 , R_6 , R_8 , and R_7 are each independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, C_1 - C_{10} alkenyl, C_1 - C_{10} alkynyl,
 C_3 - C_8 cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, or any two adjacent hydrocarbyl groups in the set R_4 , R_6 , R_8 , and R_7 , com-
 20 bine with the ring carbon atoms to which they are attached to form a 5 or 6 membered substituted or un-
 substituted carbocyclic ring; or C_1 - C_{10} haloalkyl, C_1 - C_{10} alkoxy, C_1 - C_{10} haloalkoxy, C_4 - C_8 cycloalkoxy, phe-
 25 noxy, halo, hydroxy, carboxyl, -SH, -CN, C_1 - C_{10} alkylthio, arythio, thioacetal, $-C(O)O(C_1-C_{10}$ alkyl), hy-
 drazine, hydrazino, hydrazido, $-NH_2$, $-NO_2$, $-NR_{82}R_{83}$, and $-C(O)NR_{82}R_{83}$, where, R_{82} and R_{83} are inde-
 30 pendently hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, C_1 - C_{10} hydroxyalkyl, or taken together with N, R_{82} and R_{83} form a 5 to 8
 35 membered heterocyclic ring; or
 a group having the formula;

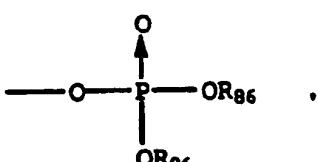
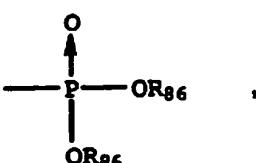


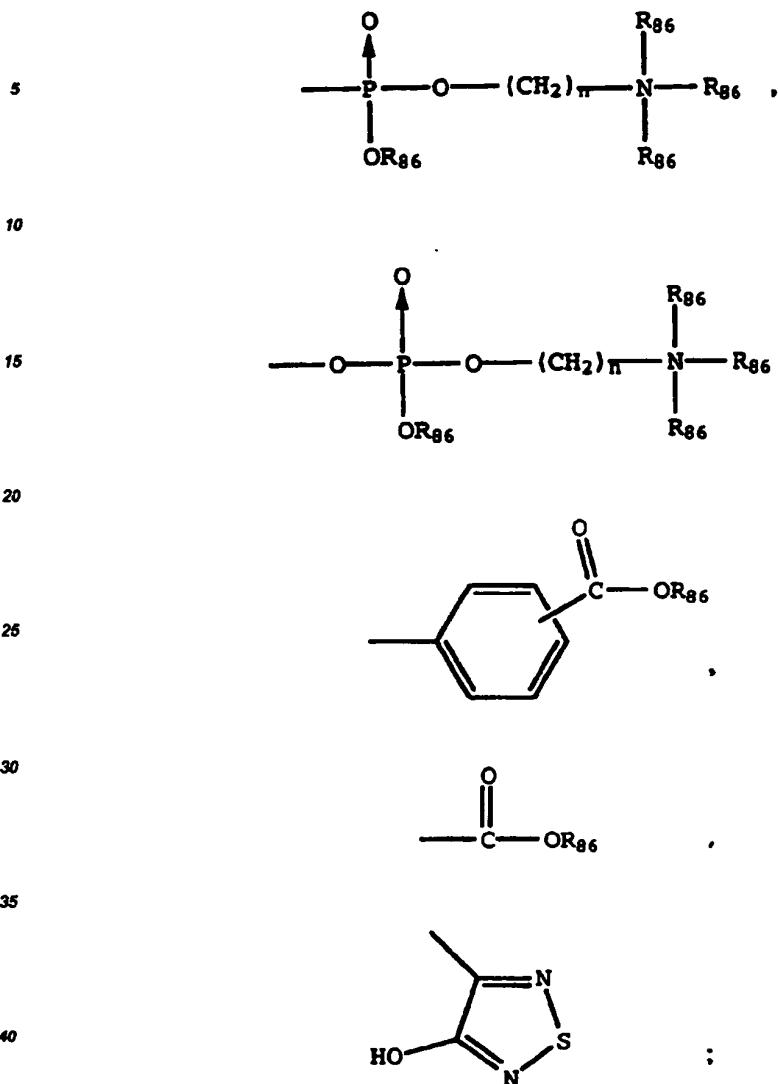
where,

30 R_{84} and R_{85} are each independently selected from hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, hydroxy, or R_{84} and R_{85} taken together are =O;

35 P is 1 to 5,

Z is a bond, $-O-$, $-N(C_1-C_{10}$ alkyl)-, $-NH-$, or $-S-$; and
 40 Q is $-CON(R_{82}R_{83})$, -5 -tetrazolyl, $-SO_3H$.





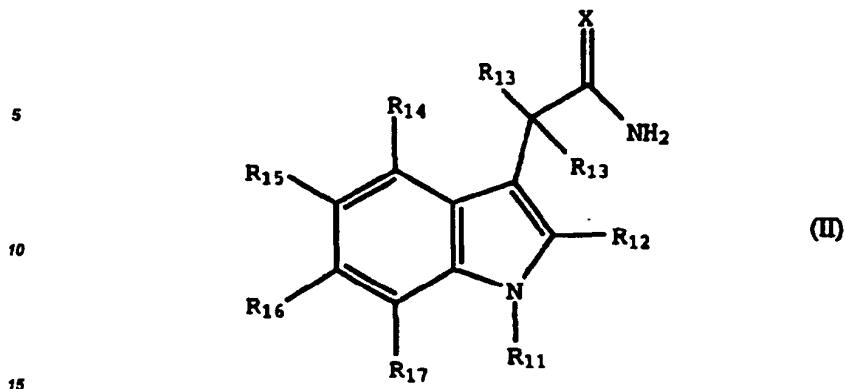
where R₈₆ is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl.

45

2. A 1H-indole-3-acetamide represented by the formula (II), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and pro-drug derivatives thereof,

50

55



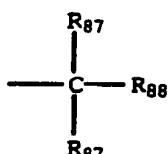
wherein :

X is oxygen or sulfur;

R₁₁ is selected from groups (i), (ii) (iii) and (iv) where:

20 (i) is C₆-C₂₀ alkyl, C₆-C₂₀ alkenyl, C₆-C₂₀ alkynyl, C₆-C₂₀ haloalkyl, C₄-C₁₂ cycloalkyl, or
 (ii) is aryl or aryl substituted by halo, nitro, -CN, -CHO, -OH, -SH, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, carboxyl, amino, or hydroxyamino; or
 (iii) is -(CH₂)_n(R₈₀), or -(NH)-(R₈₁), where n is 1 to 8, and R₈₀ is a group recited in (i), and R₈₁ is selected from a group recited in (i) or (ii);

25 (iv) is



35 where R₈₇ is hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₈₈ is selected from the group; phenyl, naphthyl, indenyl, and biphenyl, unsubstituted or substituted by halo, -CN, -CHO, -OH, -SH, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, phenyl, nitro, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ haloalkyl, carboxyl, amino, hydroxyamino; or a substituted or unsubstituted 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring;

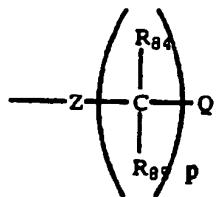
40 R₁₂ is halo, C₁-C₂ alkylthio, or C₁-C₂ alkoxy;

each R₁₃ is independently hydrogen, halo, or methyl;

45 R₁₄, R₁₅, R₁₆, and R₁₇ are each independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkenyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkynyl, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, or any two adjacent hydrocarbyl groups in the set R₁₄, R₁₅, R₁₆, and R₁₇, combine with the ring carbon atoms to which they are attached to form a 5 or 6 membered substituted or unsubstituted carbocyclic ring; or C₁-C₁₀ haloalkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, C₁-C₁₀ haloalkoxy, C₄-C₈ cycloalkoxy, phenoxy, halo, hydroxy, carboxyl, -SH, -CN, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, arylthio, thioacetal, -C(O)O(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl), hydrazide, hydrazino, hydrazido, -NH₂, -NO₂, -NR₈₂R₈₃, and -C(O)NR₈₂R₈₃, where, R₈₂ and R₈₃ are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ hydroxyalkyl, or taken together with N, R₈₂ and R₈₃ form a 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring; or a group having the formula;

50

55

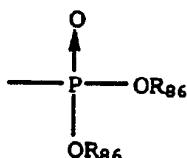


10

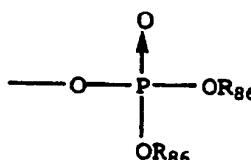
where,

R₈₄ and R₈₅ are each independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, hydroxy, or R₈₄ and R₈₅ taken together are =O;
 p is 1 to 5,
 15 Z is a bond, -O-, -N(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl)-, -NH-, or -S-; and
 Q is -CON(R₈₂R₈₃), -5-tetrazolyl, -SO₃H,

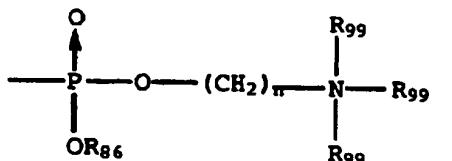
20



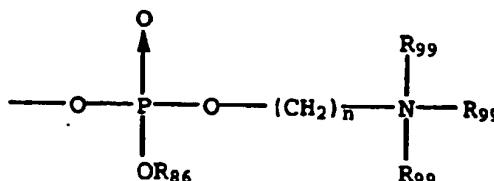
25



35

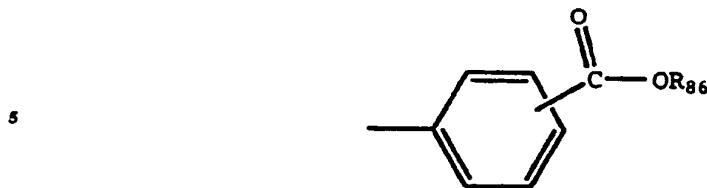


40



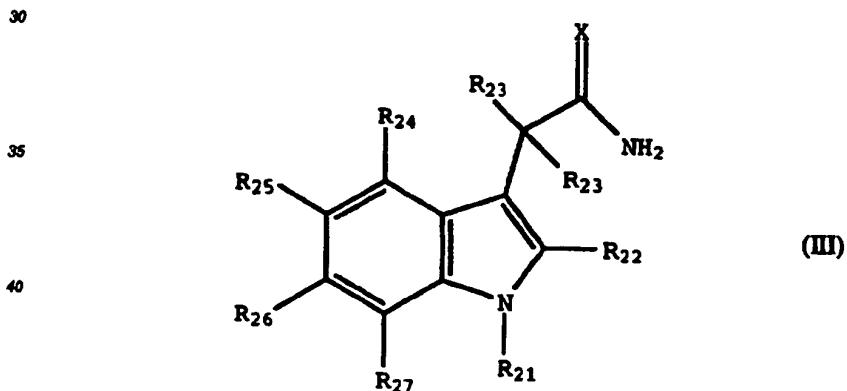
50

55



25 where n is 1 to 8, R₈₆ is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₉₉ is selected from hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl.

3. A 1H-indole-3-acetamide represented by the formula (III), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and pro-drug derivatives thereof,



wherein :

X is oxygen or sulfur;

R₂₁ is -(CH₂)_n-(R₈₆), or -(NH)-(R₈₆), where n is 1 to 8, and R₈₆ is aryl or aryl substituted by C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₂-C₁₀ alkenyl, C₂-C₁₀ alkynyl, C₁-C₁₀ haloalkyl, C₄-C₁₂ cycloalkyl, C₁-C₁₀ hydroxyalkyl, carboxyl, halo, -CN, -CHO, -OH, -SH, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, carboxyl, amino, or hydroxyamino, or a substituted or unsubstituted 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring;

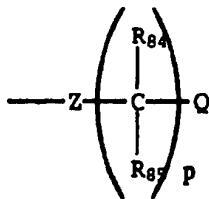
R₂₂ is hydrogen, halo, C₁-C₃ alkyl, ethenyl, cyclopropyl, C₁-C₂ alkylthio, C₁-C₂ alkoxy, -CHO, -CN; each R₂₃ is independently hydrogen, halo, or methyl;

R₂₄ and R₂₅ are each independently selected from (a) and (b) where;

(a) is hydrogen, halo, alkyl, or alkoxy, and;

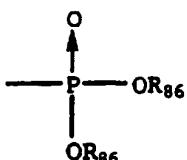
(b) is a group having the formula:

5

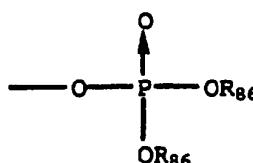


10 with the proviso that at least one of R_{24} and R_{25} must be selected from (b), and where;
 R_{24} and R_{25} are each independently selected from hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, hydroxy, or R_{24} and R_{25} taken together are $=O$;
 p is 1 to 5,
 15 Z is a bond, $-O-$, $-N(C_1-C_{10}$ alkyl)-, $-NH-$, or $-S-$; and
 Q is $-CON(R_{62}R_{63})$, -5 -tetrazolyl, $-SO_3H$,

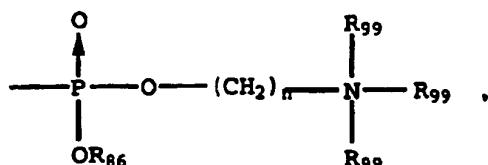
20



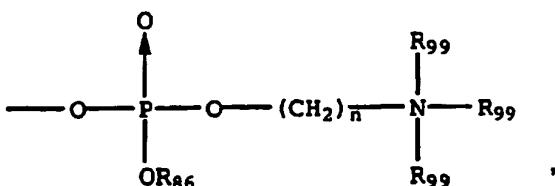
25



30

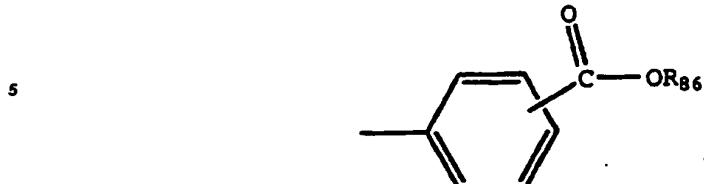


35



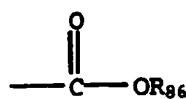
40

55

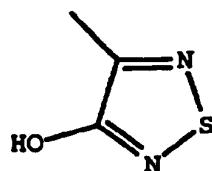


10

15



20

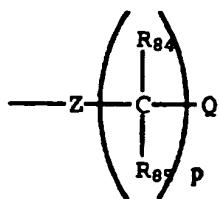


25 where n is 1 to 8, R₆₈ is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₆₉ is selected from hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl;

30 R₂₆ and R₂₇ are each independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkenyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkynyl, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, or the adjacent hydrocarbyl groups in the groups R₂₆ and R₂₇ combine with the ring carbon atoms to which they are attached to form a 5 or 6 membered substituted or unsubstituted carbocyclic ring; or C₁-C₁₀ haloalkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, C₁-C₁₀ haloalkoxy, C₄-C₈ cycloalkoxy, phenoxy, halo, hydroxy, carboxyl, -SH, -CN, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, arythio, thioacetal, -C(O)O(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl), hydrazide, hydrazino, hydrazido, -NH₂, -NO₂, -NR₆₂R₆₃, and -C(O)NR₆₂R₆₃, where, R₆₂ and R₆₃ are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ hydroxyalkyl, or taken together with N, R₆₂ and R₆₃ form a 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring; or

35 a group having the formula;

40



45

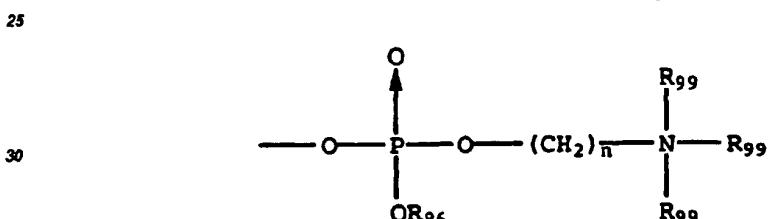
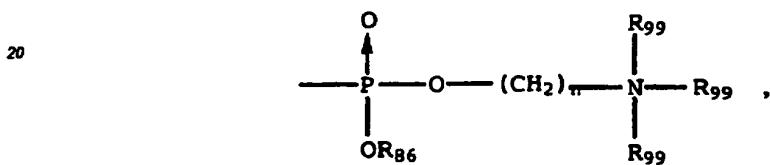
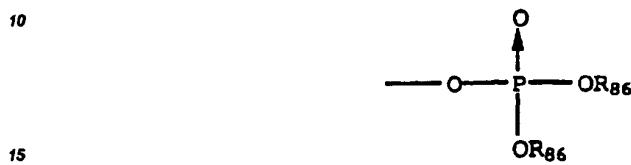
where,

R₆₄ and R₆₅ are each independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, hydroxy, or R₆₄ and R₆₅ taken together are =O;

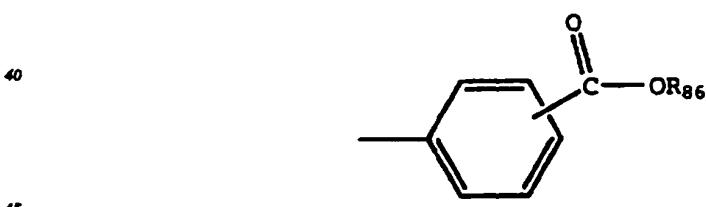
p is 1 to 5;

50 Z is a bond, -O-, -N(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl)-, -NH-, or -S-; and Q is -CON(R₆₂R₆₃), -5-tetrazolyl, -SO₃H,

55



35

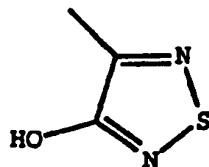


45



55

5



10 where n is 1 to 8, R₆₈ is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₆₉ is selected from hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl.

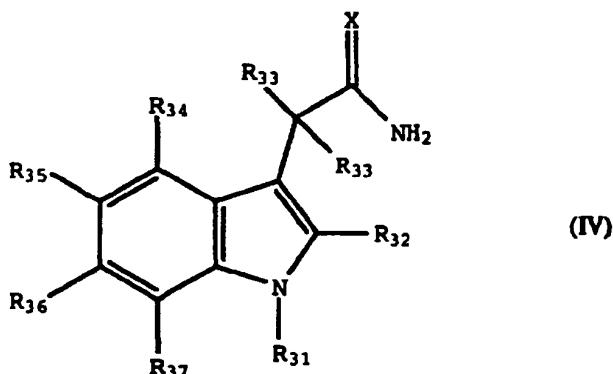
4. A 1H-indole-3-acetamide represented by the formula (IV), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and pro-drug derivatives thereof,

15

20

25

30



(IV)

wherein :

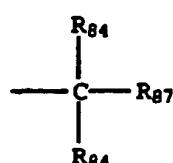
X is oxygen or sulfur;

R₃₁ is selected from groups (i), (ii) and (iii) where;

35 (i) is C₆-C₂₀ alkyl, C₆-C₂₀ alkenyl, C₆-C₂₀ alkynyl, C₆-C₂₀ haloalkyl, C₄-C₁₂ cycloalkyl, or
 (ii) is aryl or aryl substituted by halo, -CN, -CHO, -OH, -SH, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, carboxyl, amino, or hydroxyamino;
 (iii) is

40

45

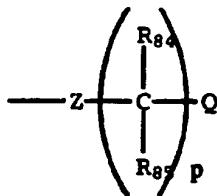


50 where R₆₄ is hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₆₇ is selected from the group; phenyl, naphthyl, indenyl, and biphenyl, unsubstituted or substituted by halo, -CN, -CHO, -OH, -SH, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, carboxyl, amino, hydroxyamino; or a substituted or unsubstituted 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring;

R₃₂ is halo, C₁-C₂ alkylthio, C₁-C₂ alkoxy;each R₃₃ is independently hydrogen, halo, or methyl;R₃₄ and R₃₅ are each independently selected from (a) and (b) where;

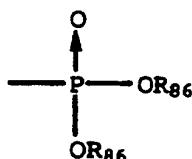
55 (a) is hydrogen, halo, alkyl, or alkoxy, and
 (b) is a group having the formula;

5

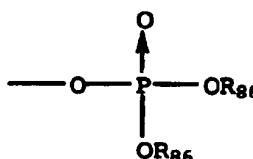


10 with the proviso that at least one of R₃₄ and R₃₅ must be selected from (b), and where:
 R₃₄ and R₃₅ are each independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, hydroxy, or R₃₄ and R₃₅ taken together are =O;
 p is 1 to 5,
 15 Z is a bond, -O-, -N(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl)-, -NH-, or -S-; and
 Q is -CON(R₆₂R₆₃), -5-tetrazolyl, -SO₃H,

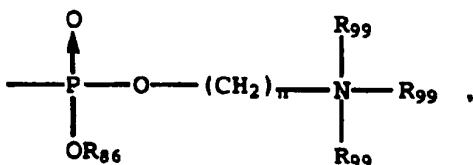
20



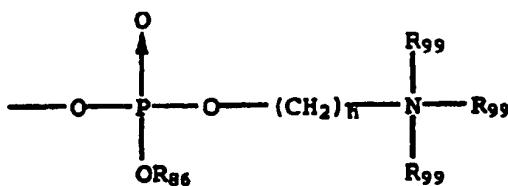
25



30



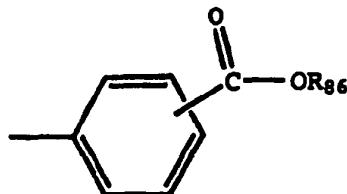
40



50

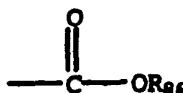
65

5



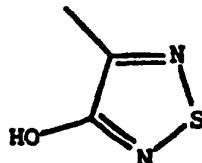
10

15



20

25

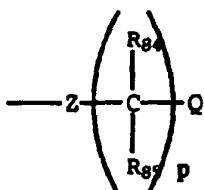


:

where n is 1 to 8, R₈₆ is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₈₉ is selected from hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl.

R₈₆ and R₈₇ are each independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₂-C₁₀ alkenyl, C₂-C₁₀ alkynyl, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, or the adjacent hydrocarbyl groups in the groups R₈₆ and R₈₇ combine with the ring carbon atoms to which they are attached to form a 5 or 6 membered substituted or unsubstituted carbocyclic ring; or C₁-C₁₀ haloalkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, C₁-C₁₀ haloalkoxy, C₄-C₈ cycloalkoxy, phenoxy, halo, hydroxy, carboxyl, -SH, -CN, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, arylthio, thiocetal, -C(O)O(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl), hydrazide, hydrazino, hydrazido, -NH₂, -NO₂, -NR₈₂R₈₃, and -C(O)NR₈₂R₈₃, where, R₈₂ and R₈₃ are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ hydroxyalkyl, or taken together with N, R₈₂ and R₈₃ form a 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring; or a group having the formula:

40



45

where,

R₈₄ and R₈₅ are each independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, hydroxy, or R₈₄ and R₈₅ taken together are =O;

50

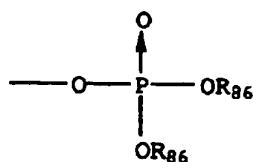
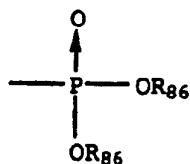
p is 1 to 5;

Z is a bond, -O-, -N(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl)-, -NH-, or -S-; and

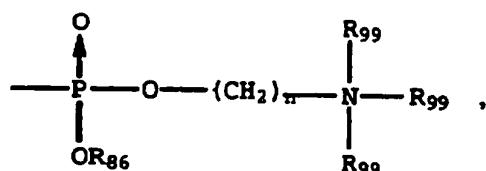
Q is -CON(R₈₂R₈₃), -5-tetrazolyl, -SO₃H,

55

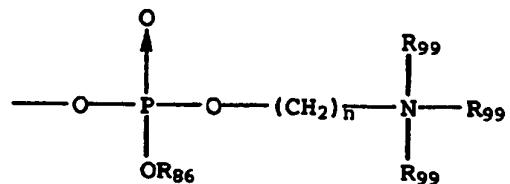
EP 0 620 215 A1



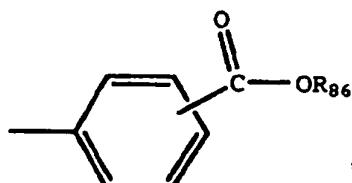
15



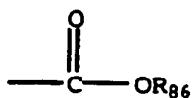
25



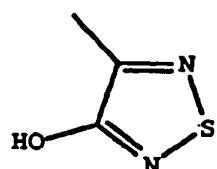
35



45

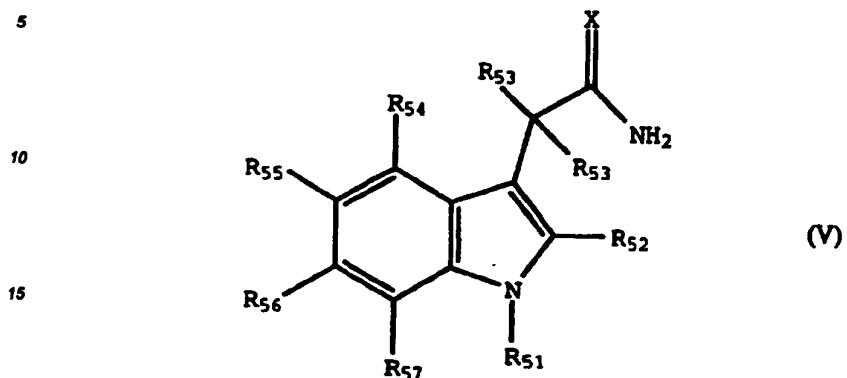


50



where n is 1 to 8, R₈₆ is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₉₉ is selected from hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl.

5. A 1H-indole-3-acetamid represented by the formula (V), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and pro-drug derivatives thereof,



20 wherein;

X is oxygen;

R51 is



where,

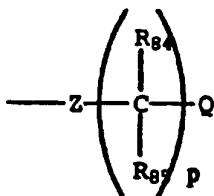
35 R84 is hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R87 is -(CH₂)_m-(phenyl) or -(CH₂)_m-(biphenyl), wherein m is 0 to 2 and the phenyl or biphenyl radicals are unsubstituted or substituted by halo, -CN, -CHO, -OH, nitro, phenyl, -SH, C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, carboxyl, amino, hydroxyamino or a substituted or unsubstituted 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring;

40 R82 is halo, methylthio, cyclopropyl, or C₁-C₃ alkyl;
each R53 is hydrogen or halo;

R84 and R85 are each independently selected from (a) and (b) where;

(a) is hydrogen, and;

(b) is a group having the formula;



with the proviso that at least one of R84 and R85 must be selected from (b), and where;

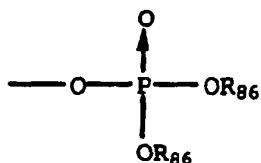
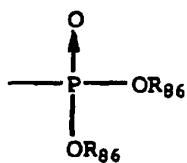
R84 and R85 are each independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, hydroxy, or R84 and R85 taken together are =O;

55 p is 1 to 5;

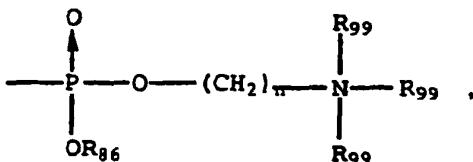
Z is a bond, -O-, -N(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl)-, -NH- or -S-; and

Q is -5-tetrazolyl, -SO₃H,

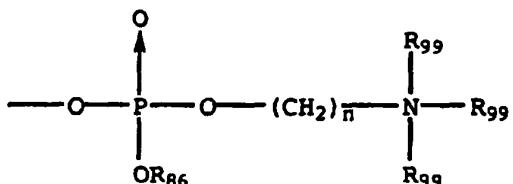
EP 0 620 215 A1



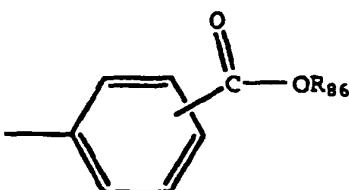
15



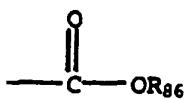
25



35



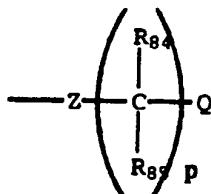
45



where n is 1 to 8, R_{66} is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, and R_{99} is selected from hydrogen or C_1 - C_{10} alkyl;

55 R_{66} and R_{67} are each independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, aryl, aralkyl, C_1 - C_{10} haloalkyl, C_1 - C_{10} alkxy, C_1 - C_{10} haloalkoxy, phenyl, halo, hydroxy, carboxyl, or a group having the formula;

5



10 where,

R₈₄ and R₈₅are each independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, hydroxy, or R₈₄ and R₈₅ taken together are =O;

p is 1 to 5,

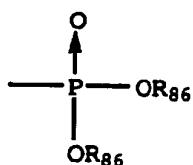
15

Z

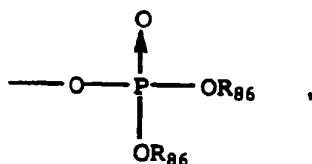
Q

is a bond, -O-, -N(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl)-, -NH-, or -S-; andis -5-tetrazolyl, -SO₃H,

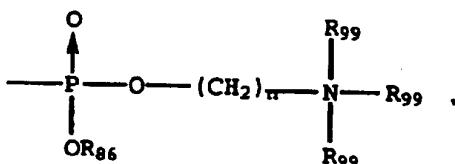
20



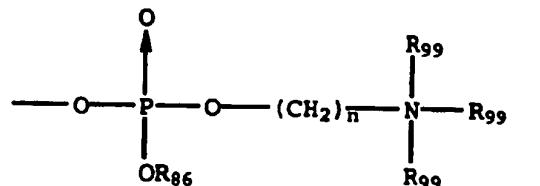
25



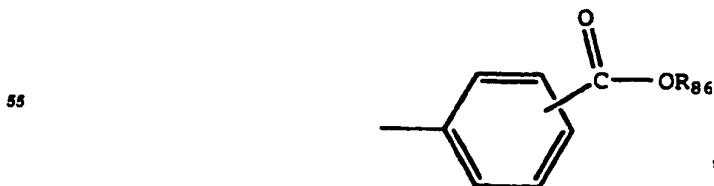
30

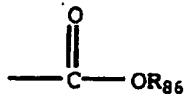


40



50



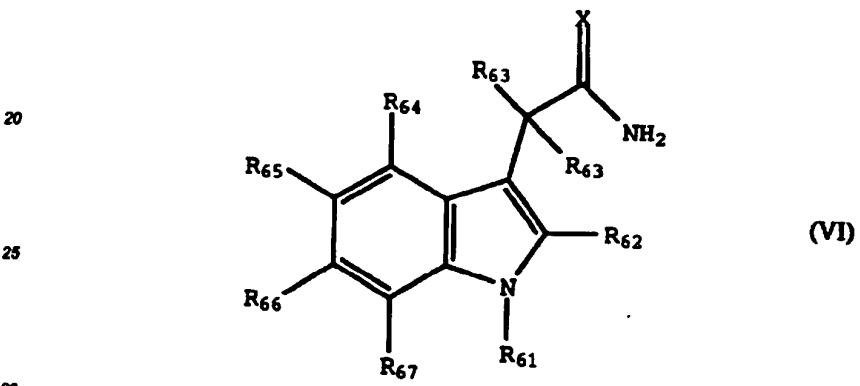


where n is 1 to 8, R_{86} is hydrogen a metal, or $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkyl, and R_{99} is selected from hydrogen or $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkyl.

10 6. A pharmaceutical formulation comprising as an active ingredient, a compound as claimed in any one of Claims 1 to 5, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, associated with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers therefor.

7. A compound of formula (VI)

15



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug derivative thereof for use in inhibiting sPLA₂ mediated release of fatty acid which comprises contacting sPLA₂; wherein in formula (VI):

35 X is oxygen or sulfur;

R_{61} is selected from groups (i), (ii) and (iii) where:

(i) is $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{20}$ alkyl, $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{20}$ alkenyl, $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{20}$ alkyne, $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{20}$ haloalkyl, $\text{C}_4\text{-C}_{12}$ cycloalkyl, or

(ii) is aryl or aryl substituted by halo, -CN, -CHO, -OH, -SH, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkylthio, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkoxythio, carboxyl, amino, or hydroxyamino;

40 (iii) is

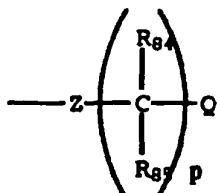


50 where R_{84} is hydrogen or $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkyl, and R_{85} is selected from the group; phenyl, naphthyl, indenyl, and biphenyl, unsubstituted or substituted by halo, -CN, -CHO, -OH, nitro, phenyl, -SH, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkylthio, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkoxy, amino, hydroxyamino; or a substituted or unsubstituted 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring, or R_{84} and R_{85} taken together are =O;

55 R_{82} is hydrogen, halo, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$ alkyl, ethenyl, cyclopropyl, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_2$ alkylthio, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_2$ alkoxy, -CHO, -CN; each R_{63} is independently hydrogen, or halo;

55 R_{64} , R_{65} , R_{66} , and R_{67} are each independently hydrogen, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkyl, $\text{C}_2\text{-C}_{10}$ alkenyl, $\text{C}_2\text{-C}_{10}$ alky-
nyl, $\text{C}_3\text{-C}_8$ cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, or any two adjacent hydrocarbyl groups in the set R_{64} , R_{65} , R_{66} , and
 R_{67} , combine with the ring carbon atoms to which they are attached to form a 5 or 6 membered substituted or unsubstituted carbocyclic ring; or $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ haloalkyl, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkoxy, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ haloalkoxy, $\text{C}_4\text{-C}_8$ cycloalkoxy,

phenoxy, hal, hydroxy, carboxyl, -SH, -CN, -S(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl), arythio, thioacetal, -C(O)O(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl), hydrazide, hydrazino, hydrazido, -NH₂, -NO₂, -NR₆₂R₆₃, and -C(O)NR₆₂R₆₃, where, R₆₂ and R₆₃ are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₁-C₁₀ hydroxyalkyl, or taken together with N, R₆₂ and R₆₃ form a 5 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring; or
5 a group having the formula;



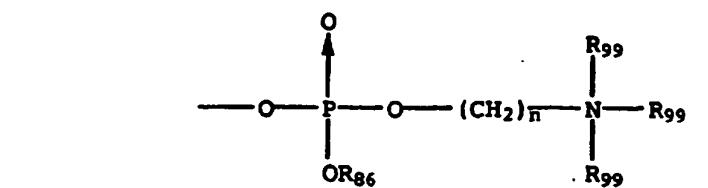
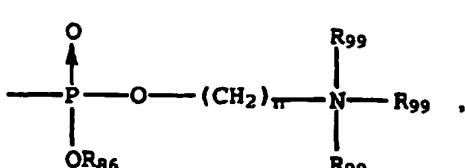
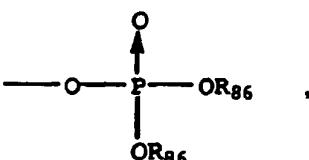
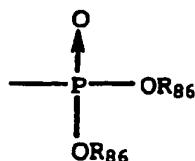
where,

R₆₄ and R₆₅ are each independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, hydroxy, or R₆₄ and R₆₅ taken together are =O;

20 p is 1 to 5,

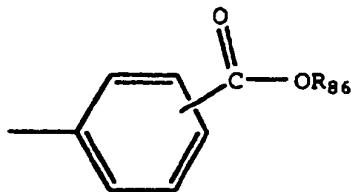
Z is a bond, -O-, -N(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl)-, -NH-, or -S-; and

Q is -CON(R₆₂R₆₃), -5-tetrazolyl, -SO₃H,



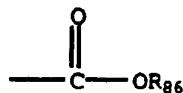
55

5

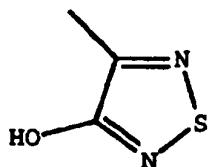


10

15



20



25

where n is 1 to 8, R₈₈ is independently selected from hydrogen, a metal, or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, and R₉₉ is selected from hydrogen or C₁-C₁₀ alkyl.

30

8. Use of a compound of formula (VI) in claim 7 for the manufacture of a medicant for treating septic shock in humans.

9. The compound of formula (VI) in claim 7 wherein the 1H-indole-3-acetamide is (i) substituted at the 1 position with a -(CH₂)-(carbocyclic radical) or -(CH₂)-(heterocyclic) radical, and (ii) substituted with an acidic group at the 4 or 5 position; with the proviso that when the 1H-indole-3-acetamide nucleus is substituted at the 4 position the acidic group is selected from the group:

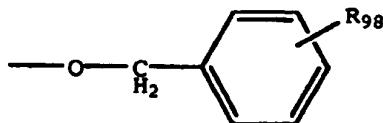
35

- O - CH₂ - R₉₈ ,
- S - CH₂ - R₉₈ ,
- NH - CH₂ - R₉₈ and
- CH₂ - CH₂ - R₉₈ ;

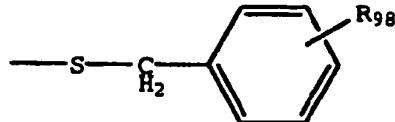
40

and when the 1H-indole-3-acetamide nucleus is substituted at the 5 position the acidic group is selected from the group:

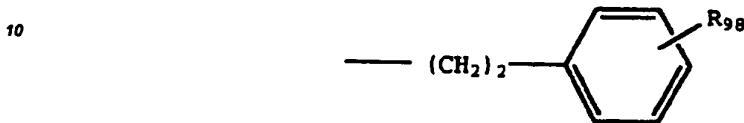
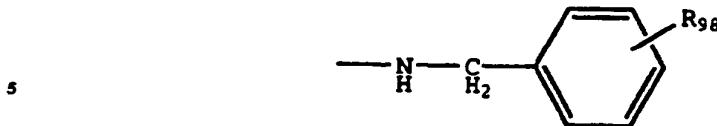
45



50



55



15

- O - (CH₂)₂₋₄ - R₉₈
- S - (CH₂)₂₋₄ - R₉₈
- NH - (CH₂)₂₋₄ - R₉₈
- CH₂ - (CH₂)₂₋₄ - R₉₈

20 where acidic group R₉₈ is selected from;

- CO₂H
- SO₃H
- P(O)(OH)₂

25 or salts, and ester derivatives
of such acidic groups.

25 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, for use in treating septic shock in humans.

10. A compound selected from the group (A) thru (AA):

- (A) 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid,
- (B) [3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid,
- (C) [3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid,
- (D) 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid,
- (E) 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid,
- (F) 5-(4-Amino-4-oxobutoxy)-2-(methylthio)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-Indole-3-acetamide,
- (G) [4-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-Indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid,
- (H) 2-Ethyl-5-(4-hydrazino-4-oxobutoxy)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-3-acetamide,
- (I) [3-[3-(2-amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid,
- (J) [3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid monomethyl ester,
- (K) [3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid,
- (L) [3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-methyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]methyl]acetic acid sodium salt,
- (M) [3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(1,1-biphenyl)-2-ylmethyl]-2-methyl-1H-indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid sodium salt,
- (N) [3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-Indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid,
- (O) 2-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-ethyl-1H-Indol-4-yl]oxy]acetic acid,
- (P) 2-Cyclopropyl-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-Indole-3-acetamide,
- (Q) [3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-cyclopropyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid,
- (R) [3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid,
- (S) 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid,
- (T) 3-[4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-ethyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-Indol-5-yl]oxy]propane]sulfonic acid,
- (U) 3-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid monomethyl ester,
- (V) 2-Bromo-8-chloro-5-methoxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-H-indole-3-acetamide,
- (W) 2-Bromo-8-chloro-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-H-indole-3 acetamide,
- (X) 4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-bromo-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]butanoic acid,

EP 0 620 215 A1

(Y) 3-[4-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-6-chloro-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]propyl]phosphonic acid,
(Z) 4-Allyl-2-ethyl-5-hydroxy-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indole-acetamide,
(AA) 2-[3-(2-Amino-2-oxoethyl)-2-methyl-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]oxy]methyl]benzoic acid;
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and prodrug derivatives of each of the compounds (A) thru (AA).

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

120



European Patent
Office

PARTIAL EUROPEAN SEARCH REPORT Application Number
which under Rule 45 of the European Patent Convention EP 94 30 2666
shall be considered, for the purposes of subsequent
proceedings, as the European search report

DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document with indication, where appropriate, of relevant passages	Relevant to claim	CLASSIFICATION OF THE APPLICATION (Int.Cls)
A	US-A-3 259 622 (T.-Y. SHEN ET AL.) * the whole document *---	1-10	C07D209/22 C07D209/24 C07D401/06 A61K31/405
X,D	US-A-3 242 163 (L.H. SARETT ET AL.) * claims; example 56 *---	1-10	
X	BULLETIN DE LA SOCIETE CHIMIQUE DE FRANCE 1962 , PARIS FR pages 1060 - 1068 M. JULIA ET AL. 'Recherches en série indolique. VI. Sur quelques tryptamines substituées.' *CAS RN 93879-42-6, 95618-47-6, 97077-43-5, 97077-80-0, 97077-79-7* * table II *---	7	
A	ARZNEIMITTEL FORSCHUNG. DRUG RESEARCH vol. 30(II), no. 8A , 1980 , AULENDORF DE pages 1314 - 1325 K.-H. BOLTZE ET AL. 'Chemische Struktur und antiphlogistische Wirkung in der Reihe der substituierten Indol-3-essigsäuren.' * the whole document *---	1-10 -/-	TECHNICAL FIELDS SEARCHED (Int.Cls) C07D A61K

INCOMPLETE SEARCH

The Search Division considers that the present European patent application does not comply with the provisions of the European Patent Convention to such an extent that it is not possible to carry out a meaningful search into the state of the art on the basis of some of the claims

Claims searched completely:

Claims searched incompletely:

Claims not searched:

Reason for the limitation of the search:

see sheet C

Place of search	Date of completion of the search	Examiner
THE HAGUE	22 July 1994	Bosma, P
CATEGORY OF CITED DOCUMENTS		
X : particularly relevant if taken alone Y : particularly relevant if combined with another document of the same category A : technological background O : non-written disclosure P : intermediate document	T : theory or principle underlying the invention E : earlier patent document, but published on, or after the filing date D : document cited in the application L : document cited for other reasons R : member of the same patent family, corresponding document	



DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT			CLASSIFICATION OF THE APPLICATION (Int.Cl.)
Category	Citation of document with indication, where appropriate, of relevant passages	Relevant to claim	
A	<p>CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, vol. 112, no. 24, 11 June 1990, Columbus, Ohio, US; abstract no. 223181s, A.H. KAHNS ET AL. 'Kinetics of hydrolysis of indomethacin and indomethacin ester prodrugs in aqueous solution.' page 407 ; *CAS RN 6264-33-1* * abstract * & ACTA PHARMACEUTICA NORDICA vol. 1, no. 6 , 1989 , STOCKHOLM pages 327 - 336</p> <p>---</p>	1-10	
X	<p>JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY vol. 20, no. 10 , 1977 , WASHINGTON US pages 1344 - 1346 A. ANDREANI ET AL. 'Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory agents. 2. Synthesis and biological activity of 2-chloroindolecarboxylic acids.' *compound 11*</p> <p>---</p>	1,2,4,7	TECHNICAL FIELDS SEARCHED (Int.Cl.)
X	<p>BULLETIN DE LA SOCIETE CHIMIQUE DE FRANCE 1965 , PARIS FR pages 1411 - 1417 M. JULIA ET AL. 'Recherches en série indolique. XIII. Sur quelques méthoxy-5 et -6 tryptamines.' *page 1412: N-benzyl-3-indolylacetamide*</p> <p>-----</p>	7	



EP 94 30 2666

-C-

MEANINGFUL SEARCH NOT POSSIBLE ON THE BASIS OF ALL CLAIMS

The subject matter of the present application is so broad that a complete search is not possible on economic grounds.

(See Guidelines for Examination in the EPO, Part B, Chapter III.2).
Therefore the search has been based on the examples (Rule 45 EPC).